

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
University of Toronto

<https://archive.org/details/31761114677156>

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

4

Library

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

Government
Publications

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY EACH OF

(a) CANADIAN ARCTIC GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A
RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS
CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON TERRITORY AND
THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES; and

(b) FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD. FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY
THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS
WITHIN THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES,

FOR THE PURPOSE OF A PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

August 22, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

Volume 60

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

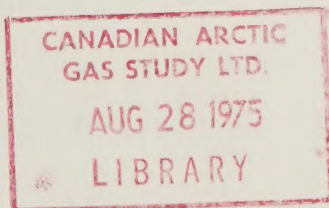
AUG 28 1975

LIBRARY

APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.	
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,	
Mr. Alick Ryder and	
Mr. Ian Roland	for Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry;
Mr. D. M. Goldie, Q.C.	
Mr. Jack Marshall,	
Mr. Darryl Carter, and	
Mr. John Steeves	for Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline Limited;
Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.	
Mr. Alan Hollingworth	for Foothills Pipelines Ltd.;
Mr. Russell Anthony,	
Prof. Alastair Lucas	for Canadian Arctic Resources Committee;
Mr. Glen W. Bell and	
Mr. Gerry Sutton	for Northwest Territories Indian Brotherhood and Metis Association of the Northwest Territories;
Ms. Leslie Lane	for Inuit Tapirisat of Canada and the Committee for Original Peoples' Entitlement;
Mr. Ron Veale and	
Mr. Allen Lueck	for the council for the Yukon Indians
Mr. Carson H. Templeton	for Environment Protect- ion Board;
Mr. David Reesor	for Northwest Territories Association of Muni- cipalities
Mr. Murray Sigler	for Northwest Territories Chamber of Commerce

347
M835
Vol. 60



I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD.:

E.A. MIROSH

M.A. FAWCETT

Leo BOUCKHOUT

K. GILLESPIE

C.W. DREW, Jr.

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Scott (cont) 8485

- Re-Examination 8588

Yellowknife, N.W.T.,

August 22, 1975.

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

THE COMMISSIONER: I

said yesterday that I'd rule on the motion that Mr. Gibbs brought to introduce evidence.

Foothills Pipe Lines has sought permission to introduce evidence that Canada has an urgent need for natural gas from the Mackenzie Delta and the Beaufort Sea.

This is a point of view that the industry has been urging in public. Indeed, Mr. Horte of Arctic Gas has been the leading spokesman of this side of the argument. He says that the construction of the pipeline is essential, and that it must begin immediately, because Canadian supplies of gas are running out. There is another side to this argument. Those on the other side say the pipeline is not necessary now, and need not be built for ten years. They say Canada would have sufficient gas if we did not export a large part of our production.

They are all entitled to argue the case in public, one side for the pipeline, the other against. That is their right as citizens of a free country.

The question then is whether it has been shown that this issue is one the Inquiry ought to consider.

My job and the job of the Inquiry is to consider the impact that this pipeline

1 will have in all its ramifications, if it is built.
2 To do that I am bound to give the peoples of the north
3 a fair hearing. I intend to do that, and to ensure
4 that this Inquiry is fair and complete.

5 It is true that if the pipe-
6 line is built there will likely be enhanced explora-
7 tion activity in gas fields and potential gas fields
8 throughout the Western Arctic. So the Inquiry must
9 consider the location and extent of the gas fields in
10 the Mackenzie Delta, the likely extent of further
11 gas exploration in the delta, the Beaufort Sea, and
12 the Mackenzie Valley, and the impact that the develop-
13 ment of the gas fields will have in the north.

14 But that is far from saying
15 that the question of Canada's gas requirements for the
16 1980's is a matter that I should consider. It is not.
17 It is a matter for the National Energy Board.

18 Nothing has been advanced that
19 would justify this Inquiry examining Canada's require-
20 ments for natural gas. If we did, then we would have
21 to go into the question of exports, since the extent
22 of our future requirements is dependent upon our
23 export policy. That is beyond the scope of the Inquiry.

24 I am to consider the impact
25 of a gas pipeline on the north in all its ramifica-
26 tions, and to recommend the terms and conditions to be
27 imposed if a pipeline is to be built.

28 It is for the National Energy
29 Board to consider the question whether Canada's need
30 for gas requires the building of a gas pipeline to

1 to bring frontier gas to market.

2 It will be for the Government
3 of Canada when they have my report before them, and
4 the National Energy Board's report, to weigh Canada's
5 need for frontier gas, and the impact of the construc-
6 tion of a pipeline on the north and on northern peoples,
7 and then to decide if a pipeline should be built, and
8 if it is to be built, then where it should be built
9 and who should build it. These are political decisions
10 to be taken by those who have been elected to make
11 such decisions.

12 So I'm not going to hear Mr.
13 Mackie's evidence.

14 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
15 I understand that this panel is the balance of the
16 evidence Mr. Hollingworth has available for this
17 week and next, and due to your ruling there may be a
18 sudden exodus for the 10:45 plane. I just thought
19 that as I had begun my cross-examination I should
20 advise the panel at least that they are not going to
21 make the 10:45 plane, that the best course in the
22 circumstances is for them to just sit back and relax
23 and see if they can't be instructed.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, before
25 you go ahead, I should say that I have a message here
26 from the chief at Trout Lake:

27 "Please take our own food."

28 So all those who are going to Trout Lake tomorrow should
29 be warned, bring your own food.

30 That probably goes for Nahanni

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

Butte as well.

E.A. MIROSH,
M.A. FAWCETT,
LEO BOUCKHOUT,
K. GILLESPIE,
C.W. DREW, JR., resumed:

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT (CONTINUED):

Q I'd like to begin by finding out something about the sequence of the process by which this route was selected, and Mr. Fawcett, I ask you to turn to your evidence at page No. 7, and question 11.

WITNESS FAWCETT: Yes.

Q In that answer you begin by describing the fact that your initial appraisal studies indicated that re-routing would be required at the northerly end and the southerly end, but that you generally accepted the 400-mile segment of route that Arctic Gas had adopted. Then further on at the top of the next page:

"To aid Foothills personnel in defining the proposed pipeline corridor in two revised segments, government topographic maps at a horizontal scale of 4 miles to the inch were obtained. These, together with the Arctic Land Use series maps, supplemented with other related published material were used in conjunction with geological survey maps to select a preliminary route."

Now I take it that that was the material that you would have had before you at that very early stage.

1 A That is correct, sir.

2 Q And at about what time
3 did you collect that material and have it ready to
4 select a preliminary route?

5 A We had that when I
6 joined the company, I procured the material from
7 Ottawa and I had that available in October of
8 last year.

9 Q In October of 1974.
10 Well, then you go and I take it having got that
11 material the next stage was to select a preliminary
12 route?

13 A That is correct.

14 Q Were you going to
15 select a route or a corridor?

16 A Our initial attempt
17 on the mapping was to select a corridor.

18 Q So would it be correct
19 to say that what you should perhaps have said there
20 in the last sentence of that first paragraph is
21 to select the preliminary corridor?

22 A Yes, I'd agree with
23 that.

24 Q And the next paragraph
25 I take it describes what you did with these maps.
26 With all factors being equal the most economical
27 pipeline route is the shortest distance between
28 its originating and terminating stations as pointed
29 out earlier. There are invariably, however, a number
30 of constraints placed upon the locator which governs

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew,
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 the selection of the line between them.

2 Well, now, who was the
3 locator of the preliminary corridor?

4 A I believe you could say
5 that I was.

6 Q I see. Well, now,
7 and I take it therefore that this preliminary corridor
8 of 15 to 20 miles was selected at this stage in about
9 October by you?

10 A That is correct, yes.

11 Q Well, now did you have
12 any -- excuse me, the next sentence says, "These
13 were discussed in the criteria description and
14 when defined act as control points in route selection."
15 Now, do I understand that when you had your maps
16 and when you went looking for your 15 to 20 miles
17 corridor, you devised some control point?

18 A That is correct, yes.

19 Q Well, now, what were
20 the control points?

21 A I believe there were
22 a number of them at the beginning. First of all,
23 the physical control points, such as lakes, rivers,
24 any indication that we had consultations with our
25 environmental representative in Foothills, trapping
26 zones, we had consultations with the geotechnical group
27 as to the viability of the approach to the corridor
28 to some of the areas of terrain that we passed over.

29 Q Well, let's just be a
30 little more precise if I can. I take it that the

1 first thing you did after you had your map was you
2 mapped a series of control points.

3 A That is correct. After
4 consultation with the other groups.

5 Q All right. Now,
6 in mapping these control points, who did the mapping
7 of them?

8 A I believe that we set
9 the control points first determining in the
10 200 mile, say at where the control points should
11 be, deciding on that after consultation with the
12 others.

13 Q All right. Well, were
14 the control points things to be avoided?

15 A To be avoided or to be
16 accepted.

17 Q All right, well, did
18 you map the control points for the whole route?

19 A Yes, you could say we
20 did.

21 Q Including the 400
22 mile segment?

23 A No, I will have to revise
24 that. It was the northern 200 and the southern 200
25 we're looking at complete revisions on that.

26 Q All right, well now
27 I take it that the control points were selected by
28 you?

29 A Not necessarily, as
30 they were put down with the advice of some of our

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 consultants too.

2 Q Well, who else advised
3 on the selection of the control points?

4 A We had John Ellwood
5 originally drawn into our consultations as to the
6 routing of these two segments.

7 Q All right, so there
8 was yourself, there was John Ellwood, was there
9 anybody else assisting in the selection of the control
10 points?

11 A Yes, we had a represent-
12 ative at that time from Klohn Leonoff who assisted
13 us indirectly.

14 Q Who was that?

15 A Dan Wasyluk.

16 Q Yes, and did he partici-
17 pate in the selection of control points?

18 A Not on the control
19 points, just the verification of the corridor.

20 Q Well, I am just interested
21 at the moment in the selection of the control points
22 and I take it that you agree with me that this is
23 fundamental, because once you've selected the control
24 points, you vastly reduce your options, haven't you?

25 A That is correct.

26 Q All right, so it was
27 you and John Ellwood, who else? Anybody else?

28 A I believe that was all
29 at the beginning.

30 Q All right, and for the

1 400 route at the top and the bottom, did you map
2 these control points?

3 A No, we reviewed it on
4 the land series maps and just a general appraisal.

5 Q Well, did you ever list
6 the control points?

7 A Yes, I think they were
8 listed originally with CAGPL and we were involved
9 with that particular studies at that time.

10 Q Well, Mr. Fawcett,
11 you've told me that in October you and Mr. Ellwood
12 determined the control points. Now, what I am
13 anxious to know, can you tell me precisely what
14 those control points were?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A. If we are

2 talking about the northern, and the southern 200 miles,
3 I believe I can.

4 Q You can?

5 A I believe I can.

6 Q Do you have a list of them?

7 A Not at hand, but I could
8 make a list of them, yes.

9 Q All right. How many were
10 there, approximately?

11 A I couldn't say definitely
12 at this time.

13 Q And I take it that that
14 function was performed substantially by you and John
15 Ellwood.

16 A Mainly, sir.

17 Q Yes. Well, did anybody
18 else have any input into it?

19 A Not at the initial stage
20 there wasn't.

21 Q All right. Well now, I
22 take it as you say in the next sentence -- I'm sorry,
23 in the next paragraph, that when you -- and I refer to
24 the second sentence, that when you had established the
25 control points, and I'm quoting:

26 "As straight a route as
27 possible was then established between them
28 on the maps."

29 A That's correct.

30 Q Yes, and again when you

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 say "as straight a route as possible," do I understand
2 you to mean as straight a 15-mile corridor as possible?

3 A That's correct.

4 Q Yes. Now who did that?

5 A I did.

6 Q And do you have a map
7 that shows the corridor that you selected between the
8 control points?

9 A Yes sir, we do.

10 Q Do you have that with you?

11 A No, I don't.

12 Q Perhaps that could be
13 produced. Well now, I take it that once that was done,
14 once your corridor had been selected by you, it was
15 then flown by fixed wing aircraft.

16 A Yes sir.

17 Q Now do I understand from
18 question ¹² that the 15-mile corridor, having been
19 selected in that fashion, and with that input, you
20 then had to go onto to select a 3-mile corridor?

21 A Yes sir.

22 Q And to do that, as you
23 say in the answer to question 12, you purchased some
24 more maps on a more definitive scale.

25 A We did.

26 Q Yes, and I take it having
27 got the maps, the maps you got were the maps of the
28 15-mile corridor.

29 A They extended beyond
30 that, we got the full series of 50,000 mappings for

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 area which they have gone 100 miles each side of the corridor.

2 Q Yes, but the purpose of
3 getting these maps was to examine more closely the 15-
4 mile corridor that you had already selected.

5 A That's correct.

6 Q And I take it, as you
7 say in the answer to question -- in the answer to
8 question 12, at the top of page 9:

9 "Having got these maps, they were examined
10 under a stereoscope."

11 A No, the photographs were
12 examined under a stereoscope.

13 Q I'm sorry, photographs
14 taken from -- of the 15-mile corridor.

15 A That's correct, yes.

16 Q And who did that work?

17 A I did initially for the
18 corridor.

19 Q All right, and the purpose
20 of this was to narrow the corridor down to three
21 miles.

22 A Initially it was to
23 establish the 15-mile wide corridor that we wanted
24 to discern where the 3-mile corridor would fall within
25 it, yes.

26 Q Yes, but you selected
27 the 15-mile corridor with reference to your control
28 points in the office.

29 A Correct.

30 Q You then overflowed it.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Yes.

Q You then got the maps
and the photographs to give you a better view of the
15-mile corridor.

A That is correct.

Q You then took a stereo-
scope in order to get a 3-mile corridor.

A That's correct.

Q And you did the stereo-
scopic work initially.

A I did.

Q Well now, what can you
learn from a stereoscopic examination of these photo-
graphs?

A I believe there are a
number of things that can be -- that you can learn
to appreciate your route selection or your corridor
selection in our case. One of them was the approaches
to different drainage crossings, different river
crossings in some cases on the approaches to some
hills. These were the features that I would be looking
at initially for the corridor verification.

Q Well, I take it that
a stereoscope simply, as Mr. Drew has said, I think,
or someone has said in their answer, gives you the
advantage that you would have if you hovered in a
helicopter over the site.

A Yes, I would agree there.

Q And with the aid of that,
you selected a 3-mile corridor.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Yes.

Q Was anybody else involved
in the selection of the three-mile corridor?

A No, there wasn't.

Q Well now, the three-mile
corridor having been chosen, you then provided as you
say in the answer to question 13, that corridor to Mr
Drew.

A Yes, and to Klohn
Leonoff.

1 Q And I take it that
2 as Mr. Drew has told us he provided a terrain
3 analysis of that three mile corridor.

4 A That is correct.

5 Q And do I understand
6 that Klohn Leonoff also provided an analysis of
7 that three mile corridor?

8 A In general yes. We sur-
9 veyed the full 400 miles revision for Klohn Leonoff.

10 Q Did they provide
11 an analysis of the three mile corridor before the
12 final route was selected?

13 A I am not sure whether
14 they were drawn in before that or not.

15 Q Did anybody else analyze
16 the three mile corridor that you had selected?

17 A Just on our overflight
18 that we had with other personnel.

19 Q Well, you had an
20 overflight and you had the terrain maps that
21 were an analysis of the three mile corridor, did
22 you have any other kind of analysis by any other
23 kind of expert of the three mile corridor?

24 A At that particular
25 time we didn't.

26 Q I take it it was
27 therefore, if I can take you to the top of page
28 10, it was on the basis of the three mile corridor that
29 you had selected plus the terrain typing that Mr.
30 Drew had done, that you determined a specific route

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 within the corridor?

2 A Yes, we did.

3 Q And I take it that that
4 determination of that specific route was made by
5 you?

6 A No, it wasn't entirely.
7 It was initially made just as a straight lining on
8 my opinion and then it was verified and revised by
9 the other consultants.

10 Q Well, we'll come to
11 the other consultants in a moment, but having
12 got Mr. Drew's work, who drew the line on the map
13 first?

14 A I did.

15 Q I see, and I take
16 it that you did that with the assistance of your
17 overflight and Mr. Drew's work?

18 A Yes, and again reviewing
19 it in stereo for the particular alignment.

20 Q Yes, and at that
21 point, with the stereoscopic work, Mr. Drew's
22 work and your overflight, you were in a position
23 to draw a specific route within the corridor?

24 A I guess you could call
25 it that, yes.

26 Q And then I take it at
27 that point you gave that specific route to your
28 consultants?

29 A Yes.

30 Q And one of the con-

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 sultants you gave it to was the geotechnical people
2 at Klohn Leonoff?

3 A That is correct, yes.

4 Q And one of the -- and
5 I see that you also say that you gave it to the
6 environmentalists at Lombard North.

7 A That is correct.

8 Q All right. Well,
9 now when would you have done this?

10 A We originally initiated
11 our corridor selection in November and we drew in
12 John Ellwood in our early discussions. He contacted
13 Lombard North and I am not exactly sure when he
14 contacted them to have it reviewed.

15 Q Well, MR. Fawcett,
16 just let me follow. You told me that you were
17 the man who drew the line after Mr. Drew's work had
18 been done.

19 A That is correct.

20 Q And you then gave
21 it to the environmental consultants and the geotechnical
22 consultants.

23 A That is correct.

24 Q To be reviewed or con-
25 firmed.

26 A That is correct.

27 Q Well, now we have it
28 that Mr. Drew didn't do his work, I think, until
29 the beginning of January or later.

30 A That is correct.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q All right, well, you
2 wouldn't have drawn the line until you'd seen his
3 work.

4 A No, that is correct.

5 Q All right, so when would
6 you have drawn the line?

7 A We had it drawn and
8 revised during January and I believe that the Lombard
9 group had been approached and did appear at a meeting
10 the first part of February.

11 Q But are you telling me --
12 maybe Mr. Drew could help -- are you telling me
13 that his terrain analysis was ready in January?

14 A In portions, yes.

15 Q Was it done in sections
16 and handed to you in sections?

17 A It was, yes.

18 Q So do I understand then that
19 in drawing this line you would take a section of
20 terrain analysis that Mr. Drew had done and draw a
21 line on that and then pass it on to the consultants?

22 A That is correct.

23 Q And you would follow
24 up with another section of line when it came from
25 Mr. Drew?

26 A That is correct.

27 Q So I take it that at
28 that stage there was never a whole line drawn the
29 whole length of the route, there was simply bits
30 that were handed from Mr. Drew to you, then to the

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 consultants.

2 A I don't believe we
3 handed it to Lombard until we had the full 200 miles of
4 the north selected, no.

5 Q But I would be correct
6 in saying that what confronted the geotechnical
7 people and the environmental people was a three mile
8 corridor with a specific route in it that you had
9 drawn?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A That's correct.

3 Q And their function was
4 to comment or react to that.

5 A We asked them to do that,
6 sir, yes.

7 Q What precisely did
8 you ask the environmentalists of Lombard North to
9 do?

10 A I didn't ask them myself
11 but John Ellwood took care of that.

12 Q Do you know what John
13 Ellwood asked them to do?

14 A Not exactly, no sir.

15 Q Well now, I take it that
16 after the geotechnicians at Lombard North had looked
17 at this and made their assessments, your next sentence
18 indicates what happened.

19 "The reviews led to minor route adjustments."

20 A That's correct.

21 Q Did either of them make
22 a report that recommended a minor route adjustment?

23 A They did.

24 Q Have you copies of that
25 report?

26 A I have it at the office,
27 yes.

28 Q Will you produce them
29 both?

30 A I could produce the
Klohn Leonoff. I assume that the Lombard made some

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 reports to John Ellwood, yes.

2 Q And you can produce those?

3 A I'm not certain if we
4 can or not.

5 Q But let me see if I
6 follow the situation up until now. You have selected
7 the 15-mile corridor. You have refined it to a 3-mile
8 corridor in the way you've described. Correct so far?

9 A That's correct.

10 Q You have drawn a line
11 on the 3-mile corridor after looking at Mr. Drew's
12 maps.

13 A Correct again.

14 Q Yes. You then get a
15 geotechnical assessment and an environmental assessment
16 that produced minor route adjustments.

17 A That's correct.

18 Q I put it to you, Mr.
19 Fawcett, that with the exception of minor adjustments
20 the line that was selected was selected by you.

21 A Initially, yes.

22 Q Subject to the minor route
23 adjustments entirely.

24 A Correct.

25 Q I take it that as far
26 as you know, no one else did any systematic mapping
27 of the 3-mile corridor, except Mr. Drew.

28 A I don't think I follow
29 you there, sir.

30 Q Well, were vegetation

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 prepared of the 3-mile corridor?

2 A I believe they were
3 eventually, yes.

4 Q I did not ask you about
5 eventually; I'm not interested in what was done after
6 the event, I'm asking what was done before the line
7 was drawn by you. Were there any vegetation maps
8 of the 3-mile corridor?

9 A No, there weren't.

10 Q Were there any environ-
11 mental maps of the 3-mile corridor?

12 A Just the ones that were
13 existing with the Land Use series.

14 Q Just the Land Use series?

15 A That is correct.

16 Q None prepared by you
17 or your people.

18 A No.

19 Q Were there any archaeolo-
20 gical or any other plotting maps of the 3-mile
21 corridor that you had available to you when you came
22 to draw this line?

23 A I don't believe there
24 was any in existence along the corridor.

25 Q And you didn't get any
26 yourself?

27 A No, we didn't.

28 Q Well, I also suggest to
29 you that before you drew the line on the map, you had
30 decided to accept the 400 miles of Arctic Gas route

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
CrossExam by Scott

1 -- I'm not criticizing that, I'm simply suggesting that
2 you had.

3 A I believe that we agreed
4 that we would use it, yes.

5 Q And I take it, that
6 having decided to accept the 400 mile segment, that
7 very substantially dictated the location of the 3-
8 mile corridor and the line.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
10 dictated the location of what?

11 MR. SCOTT: Of the 3-mile
12 corridor, at the 200-mile end and the 200-mile bottom,
13 and the line within it.

14 A I believe when you take
15 a look at the map you will see that the middle 400
16 miles dictated a very narrow section of line that
17 would control our termination of the northern 200-mile
18 segment, and the originating point for the southern
19 200-mile segment. I don't believe that that restricted
20 us in that sense. I believe that the actual physical
21 land formation dictated the originating points for
22 those.

23 Q And I take it that that
24 is the way the route was selected that is shown on the
25 map behind you?

26 A That is correct.

27 Q Yes, and you and the other
28 members of the panel have described the process of
29 verification that is currently this summer and this
30 autumn under way.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Yes sir.

Q Yes. Well now, Mr.

Bouckhout, Mr. Fawcett has told us that beginning in January and on a sectional basis he took Mr. Drew's terrain maps, drew a line on them, and in sections passed them over to Lombard North, and I take it at this period of time you were at Lombard North.

WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: That's correct.

Q And is it correct that you prepared, as he says, an environmental assessment of those sections as they came to you?

A Essentially yes. Our initial input into it, of course, was collecting all the available information on the general area and working from the initial corridor maps, and in preparing our information we didn't restrict ourselves to a certain mile corridor, we went beyond on both sides.

Q Right, but what I'm getting at is you did a literature search of all the relevant literature that affected the Mackenzie corridor.

A Yes, we did.

Q And what you got from Foothills was a terrain map which had a line on it that was drawn by Mr. Fawcett, as described, and you would get that in sections.

A We didn't per se receive each terrain map. We received other maps with lines drawn on them.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
CrossExam by Scott

1
2 Q I'm sorry, but what you
3 did receive from Mr. Fawcett was a map which had a
4 line on it.

5 A That's correct.

6 Q You would receive this
7 in sections.

8 A Yes, I believe that's
9 right.

10 Q Yes, and I take it that
11 you made an environmental assessment in some fashion
12 of the location of that proposed line to determine
13 whether it was properly placed from an environmental
14 point of view.

15 A Yes, we did, yes.

16 Q And you would do that
17 again on a sectional basis.

18 A In the final run, of
19 course, yes, it was done. Everything could be done at
20 once, therefore we worked with what we had and then
21 we acted on what came later.

22 Q And that led, as Mr.
23 Fawcett said, to minor adjustments in the line.

24 A That's right.

25 Q Well now, was this all
26 done when you were at Lombard North?

27 A Yes, I believe it was.

28 Q All right. Now who were
29 the people and what were their disciplines that you
30 had working with you at Lombard North assisting you

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 in this assessment?

2 A The disciplines included
3 some mammalogists; do you want the individual names
4 as well, sir?

5 Q Well, tell me the prin-
6 cipal person in each discipline?

7 A The principal person
8 in the field of mammalogy was Mr. Almer De Bock. The
9 principal man in the field of birds was Mr. Bob Brown.
10 The principal man in the field of fisheries, there
11 were actually two fellows who were involved in fisher-
12 ies work, one was Mr. Harry Blodgett, and the other
13 was Dr. Alex Fedoruk. In the vegetation work the
14 principal man was Mr. Norbert Kondla. We also had
15 people directly with Lombard North working on the
16 aesthetics section, which was Jim Taylor, and I
17 believe, sir, that covers it from a direct input from
18 Lombard North.

19 Q Were they all employees
20 of Lombard North?

21 A Yes, they were, sir.

22 Q And did you make reports
23 from time to time on the line that had been selected?

24 A I do not recall, sir,
25 that we prepared formal reports as such. We had
26 direct communication with Mr. Ellwood and were con-
27 stantly discussing this but I don't recall making
28 specific reports on these.

29 Q Well, Arctic Gas, in
30 presenting their route, have been able to present us

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 with a detailed list of the adjustments that were made
2 in the route for environmental reasons. Now, since
3 Mr. Fawcett has told us that minor adjustments were
4 made as a result of your environmental review, can you
5 tell us what adjustments in the route Lombard North
6 and you recommended?

7 A At that stage, sir, I
8 cannot at the moment give you exact adjustments in the
9 route, in terms of what changes were made in the route
10 at that stage. I can give you a couple of examples
11 of changes in the locations, etc., of ancillary
12 facilities at that stage.

13 Q Well, I'm not concerned
14 about ancillary facilities. Did you people recommend
15 any changes in the route that Mr. Fawcett had selected?
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 A Yes, I believe we
2 did.

3 Q Have you any list of
4 them or any record of what they were?

5 A No, we don't I don't
6 believe. I just have to refer that to Lombard North.

7 Q I beg your pardon?

8 A I'd have to refer that
9 question to Lombard North. I don't believe that
10 I am aware of any list per se of these proposed
11 changes.

12 Q How many were there?

13 A I can't say, sir.

14 Q Yes, can you think
15 of any examples?

16 A Yes, we made recommendations,
17 one particular example would be the routing in the loca-
18 tion of the Norman Range north of Norman Wells where
19 the original route was fairly close to the Norman
20 Range in that region.

21 Q And what was your
22 recommendation?

23 A Our recommendation
24 at that time was that if possible we would reroute
25 some distance away from that range, but we would
26 do that pending further field studies as well.

27 Q Why?

28 A Because of the sensi-
29 tivity of the peregrine falcon, which species is
30 known to nest in that particular area.

1 Q Is this the alteration
2 referred to by Mr. Gillespie in his evidence?

3 A Yes, it is, this
4 alteration which Mr. Gillespie has referred to is
5 in reaction to our concern as well as in reaction
6 to a hydrological concern as well and it is not
7 firmly established exactly where that thing will
8 be right now.

9 Q I take it, Mr. Gillespie,
10 that you recommended that alteration for different
11 reasons?

12 WITNESS GILLESPIE: That
13 is correct, sir.

14 Q Your reasons were
15 geotechnical in nature?

16 A That is correct.

17 Q Yes. Well, now,
18 Mr. Bouckhout, can you recall any other adjustments
19 that were made on your recommendation in the line
20 that Mr. Fawcett prepared?

21 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: At this
22 moment, sir, no, I do not.

23 Q Do you recall any
24 recommendations that you made with respect to adjustments
25 that were not accepted?

26 A No, sir, I do not.

27 Q Perhaps Mr. Holling-
28 worth can let me have a list of the adjustments that
29 were made at this stage on the recommendation of
30 Lombard North.

1 And I take it that since
2 that time, Mr. Bouckhout, you of course have
3 come to Foothills.

4 A That is right.

5 Q And that your work
6 since that time has, as Mr. Fawcett I think described,
7 been verification and field studies of the line that
8 has been accepted.

9 A My work has been
10 co-ordination of the input of the environmental
11 consultants along this line.

12 Q Yes, but it is directed
13 to verification of the line that is on the map
14 behind you?

15 A Yes, it is directed to
16 assessment of that line verification plus any
17 recommendations that might be made in relation to
18 that line.

19 Q Well, now, when
20 did you come to Foothills?

21 A April 1, sir.

22 Q Yes, and are there
23 any environmentalists on the staff of Foothills
24 apart from yourself?

25 A I have one assistant.

26 Q Yes, and he is an assis-
27 tant to you, is he?

28 A That is right.

29 Q Yes, and I take it
30 that the environmental work that you require to have

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 done is in fact being contracted out to Lombard
2 North?

3 A That's right.

4 Q Yes, and that the
5 environmental consultants that are being utilized
6 are substantially employees of Lombard North.

7 A I believe so, sir.

8 Q Yes. So it would
9 be correct to say that unlike Arctic Gas, for
10 example, as I understand their situation, at
11 Foothills, all the environmental work has been
12 contracted to one firm, rather than to a collection
13 of experts from various offices or universities
14 or firms.

15 A No, sir, I don't believe
16 that is entirely correct, Lombard North has the bulk
17 of the input into the biological part, however,
18 we do also have other consultants who are involved in
19 other fields.

20 Q Yes, but they are all
21 employed or contracted for by one firm?

22 A No, they are not.

23 Q Who else do they con-
24 tract?

25 A We have hydrological
26 work being done by UNies Limited. We have air
27 quality and climate work being done by Western Research
28 and Development. We have archaeological work being
29 done by Lifeways. We are having revegetation work
being done by Dr. Vaartnou.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew,
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q And are these directly
2 under contract to Foothills?

3 A Yes, they are.

4 Q Have any of them
5 made reports?

6 A Yes, they have.

7 Q Can those be produced?

8 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well,
9 Mr. Commissioner, I am sure they will be produced. I
10 am just wondering if this is the panel for them
11 to be produced in. Mr. Scott has just asked Mr.
12 Bouckhout about various kinds of consultants in-
13 cluding consultants on subject matters which
14 aren't remotely concerned with location.

15 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
16 those reports should be on Foothills list of documents.
17 They, as I understand, are not. Whether it is
18 relevant here --

19 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well,
20 there isn't a list at the moment, Mr. Scott. You are
21 aware of that.

22 MR. SCOTT: Foothills like
23 every other participant was obliged to produce a list
24 of reports or studies within its possession or
25 power. I would have assumed that any reports or
26 studies of this type fell within that general
27 category. If they have been overlooked I would like
28 at the earliest possible time such reports as
29 exist from all these advisors. Is it possible to
30 have an undertaking that that will be done?

Mirosh, Fawcett Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well, I
2 am not quite sure I understand you. We have said that
3 we are going to comply as we know we must. It is
4 just an oversight, with the requirement to supply
5 a list of the documents relied upon by this panel
6 and by succeeding panels. I think what you are
7 asking me for is something different than that and
8 that is a list of all the documents relied upon
9 by Foothills, it seems that came from consultants
10 outside of Foothills organization itself.

11 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
12 I haven't made myself clear. I am not concerned
13 just at the moment about any documents that this
14 panel may be particularly relying on. What we
15 have ascertained is that either Foothills or its
16 environmental consultant , Lombard North, has
17 received reports from a number of experts retained
18 to give advice on matters from biology to archeaology.
19 I don't understand that those reports have been listed
20 on the production list that Foothills like all
21 other participants had to produce. Now, I am
22 not complaining about that, I am simply asking if
23 at the earliest possible moment all those reports
24 whether they were reports made to Foothills directly
25 or to its agency Lombard North, should be produced
26 for inspection.

27 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: I under-
28 stand you now and I will look into it.

29 MR. SCOTT: Q Mr. Bouckhout,
30 could I ask you to turn to page 16 and your answer

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 to question 31.

2 Without reading the first
3 paragraph it ends up by saying that a route was
4 defined and do I understand from what you and Mr.
5 Fawcett have said that the route that was defined
6 at that stage of the process was the line that
7 MR. Fawcett had provided plus the minor adjustments?

8 A Yes, I believe that is
9 right.

10 Q And then you say in
11 the next paragraph that you then moved into the
12 second stage of the environmental studies.

13 A Yes, I believe I might
14 clarify that a bit. Actually, as I see it now,
15 there were really three phases. The initial phase
16 would have been Mr. Ellwood's involvement with Mr.
17 Fawcett in the identification of the original
18 corridor and the second phase would have been our
19 reaction to that corridor, and a subsequent line
20 and then the third phase would be the phase which
21 we are now involved in which includes the field
22 work and continued literature review.

23 Q Yes, Mr. Ellwood isn't
24 on the panel, but you had no part to play with him
25 in the selection of the original corridor?

26 A That's right.

27 Q Well, now let me turn
28 to what you call in your evidence the second
29 stage, and I take it that you say there in the
30 third sentence, "We are currently conducting field

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 studies along the entire pipeline route"

2 Now, first of all, does
3 that include the 400 mile segment that you have
4 accepted from Arctic Gas?

5 A Yes, it does.

6 Q And what are these
7 field studies?

8 A These field studies in-
9 clude site investigations by the biological field
10 team where they are investigating their route
11 location as well as the various locations of
12 ancillary facilities. They are collecting some
13 quantifiable data as well as making a general
14 assessment of the location of the various facilities
15 on the mainline route and they are also doing
16 some fish work at the various stream crossings
17 for our stream and river crossing locations.

18 Q Well, let me just see
19 if I understand. I have some difficulty with
20 those sentences. We are reading now, "We are
21 currenly conducting field studies along the entire
22 pipeline route." NOW, stopping right there that
23 suggests to me that the environmentalists are
24 going out to study what they find in the field.

25 A Yes.

26 Q All right. Now,
27 the next sentence seems to qualify that. "This is
being done through a multi-disciplinary program.
In this way the route is being evaluated simultan-
eously from both the physical and biological points of view?"

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A Yes.

3 Q Now, do I understand
4 that the field study that you are talking about in
5 the first sentence is in fact a multi-disciplinary
6 program?

7 A The overall program is
8 multi-disciplinary, however, the two aspects of it,
9 the physical and the biological aspects of it are
10 not totally integrated in that they are doing
11 exactly the same things obviously.

12 Q Well, what do you mean
13 when you say that in the course of these field
14 studies the route is being evaluated simultaneously
15 from both the physical and biological points of
16 view?

17 A There sir, I am referring
18 to the fact that Klohn Leonoff is undertaking studies
19 in the field right now and we had set up the field
20 program so that the biological crews and the
21 geotechnical crews would be in close proximity and
22 reacting to each others judgments on the various
23 locations along the route.

24 Q All right, now, can
25 you tell me what disciplines and persons are partici-
26 pating, representing the biological point of view
27 in this multidisciplinary program?

28 A The prime disciplines
29 representing the biological point of view are fish,
30 birds and mammals.

31 Q And who are the people

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 who are doing it?

2 A As I said yesterday,
3 the people who are involved in this are Mr. Brown,
4 Dr. Paul Whitney, Mr. Hayden, Mr. Sopuck, Dr. Fedoruk
5 and I believe a couple of others as well.

6 Q And who represent the
7 physical point of view?

8 A The geotechnical
9 consultant, Klohn Leonoff and as well, during
10 the initial stages, Mr. Wally Drew, represented
11 the physical points of view.

12 Q Mr. Wally --?

13 A Drew, who is a member
14 of this panel.

15 Q Yes, I see, so
16 the physical point of view is represented by the
17 geotechnicians and the terrain analysis people?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A As far as the field
2 investigations go, that's correct.

3 Q Well, how many field
4 investigations of this multi-disciplinary team have
5 been made?

6 A I don't know that I
7 can actually number -- give you a number on how many
8 field investigations have been made. I don't believe
9 that's possible; it's a general investigation, it
10 doesn't break down logically into numbers.

11 Q Well, let's see if I
12 understand. I understand from this paragraph that what
13 happened is a multi-disciplinary team goes out to
14 some section of the route, and looks at it and makes
15 decisions about it.

16 A The multi-disciplinary
17 team started at the south end of the route, I believe,
18 near the Alberta border, and worked their way pro-
19 gressively north, so it's a continuous process rather
20 than a one-shot effort in site specifics.

21 Q All right, and when did
22 it begin?

23 A This began in late May,
24 I believe.

25 Q In late May, and how
26 far north have they got?

27 A They have already com-
28 pleted the movement from the south to the north, and
29 have moved from the north back to the south again,
30 and another program is rapidly being established now

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 which will commence around about the 1st of September
2 for another run along the line.

3 Q So what you're telling
4 us is that the ~~multid~~disciplinary team has covered
5 the route twice.

6 A The initial multi-disci-
7 plinary team covered the route once from the south to
8 the north. Beyond that during the second movement of
9 the biological team from the north to the south, they
10 did have contact with the physical portion of the team,
11 however they weren't doing it as a joint effort.
12 They simply maintained co-ordination and communication
13 as they got separated by some distance. However, in
14 the first phase of the program they did always stay
15 together.

16 Q All right, well let's
17 take the multi-disciplinary pass from south to north
18 that began in May. Did Mr. Drew go on that trip?

19 A Yes, he was there.

20 Q Who went from Klohn
21 Leonoff?

22 A I don't know specifically.

23 Q Well, perhaps Mr. Gilles-
24 pie can tell us who went.

25 WITNESS GILLESPIE: I was on
26 the trip, and Mr. Fred Claridge, another geotechnical
27 engineer, was on the trip, and two geologists from
28 Klohn Leonoff

29 Q How long did the trip
30 take?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Four weeks.

Q Four weeks, and you
were constantly on the ground for four weeks.

A That's correct.

Q And Mr. Drew, you were
there for four weeks?

WITNESS DREW: I was there about
25-26 days, from May 25th to June 20th.

Q I see, and I take it
there were biologists as well?

WITNESS BOUCKOUT: Yes, that's
right.

Q Well now, I've no doubt
that this extensive review has produced a report and
some recommendations.

A We do not have a report
per se. The report, of course, will be prepared this
fall and it will be a report which will cover all the
summer field investigations.

Q Yes. When in the fall
do you anticipate this report?

A That would depend on
the various commitments of the staff this fall and
winter, and in that I'm including the commitments
which we'll have here at this Commission as well as
other commitments at the National Energy Board.

Q Well, I take it, Mr.
Bouckhout, that the environmental assessment that
you've described earlier produced minor adjustments.
It would be a fair observation, would it not, that

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 this environmental multi-discipline assessment might
2 make major adjustments.

3 A This would be a possi-
4 bility, yes.

5 Q Have we any idea as to
6 when we may know when those adjustments on an environ-
7 mental basis will be recommended?

8 A I would say we do know
9 the areas right now which have been identified as
10 potential locations for revisions, and we are already
11 considering those.

12 Q All right, what are the
13 areas where you anticipate there will be adjustments?

14 A I can point to possibly
15 three areas at the moment. One area I've already
16 referred to is the line on the west side of the Norman
17 Range where we're still a bit concerned about our
18 proximity to the Northern Range per se. Another area
19 is the crossing of Smith Creek that's down near Wrigley,
20 and we are looking at a revision there.

21 Q Why?

22 A The original line
23 location crossed Smith Creek below a waterfall, and
24 our environmental people have said that if at all
25 possible they would like to re-route above the water-
26 fall, since the location below the waterfall may have
27 some fisheries significance.

28 Q Any other adjustment that
29 occurs to you that may in the works?

30 A There is another possible

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 recommendation for an adjustment of the line south,
2 immediately south and of the east channel crossing
3 and including the east channel crossing.

4 Q Now, is that a complete
5 list, or is that just off the top of your head?

6 A That's off the top of
7 my head at the moment as to what I am definitely aware
8 of at this stage. However, of course, there may be
9 others coming in of which I'm not aware.

10 Q Perhaps you can let Mr.
11 Hollingworth and Mr. Gibbs know if there are any others
12 presently being considered, and what they are and other
13 changes as they develop?

14 A Yes, I certainly will.

15 MR. MARSHALL: Excuse me, Mr.
16 Scott, sir, with your leave I will take up Mr. Scott's
17 invitation and join Mr. Mackie on the 10:45 flight.
18 Mr. Carter will be carrying on through the day.

19 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: They can dis-
20 cuss gas supply on the flight, sir.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes. Well,
22 we will see you anon.

23 MR. MARSHALL: Of that I have
24 little doubt, sir.

25 MR. SCOTT: Q Well, are you
26 going to repeat this multi-discipline program in
27 other seasons of the year?

28 A Yes, I believe we will,
29 although we do not have plans firmed up as yet to
30 do so.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Are you going to do one
2 in winter?

3 A Yes, we are.

4 Q Are you going to do one
5 at breakup?

6 A Yes, we will.

7 Q And I take it you
8 recognize the necessity for a full environmental
9 assessment of doing this work at those times as well
10 as in the summer?

11 A Yes, I do.

12 Q So do I understand,
13 therefore, that your work leading to a final line, will
14 not be completed until after breakup next year?

15 A I think this is an on-
16 going program, of course, and it's our work in reference
17 to actual alignments on the ground will not be completed
18 until the pipe is in the ground.

19 Q No, but I presume, Mr.
20 Bouckhout, that at some point you will be able to say
21 that a complete environmental assessment at all
22 relevant seasons of the year has been done.

23 A Yes.

24 Q Yes, and I take it that
25 you won't be able to say that until you've examined
26 the site at all seasons?

27 A Yes, this is also of
28 course relative to what other information is available
29 for the immediate area, and what season that subject
30 information was gotten.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Well, I take it then
2 that the earliest time at which you will be able to
3 say that is following the breakup in '75. I'm sorry,
4 in '76.

5 A I would say we will be
6 continuing studies and particularly for the reasons that
7 you have mentioned, we would like to have a look at the
8 line location in these other seasons, which we have
9 not been in the field in, and much of this will
10 confirm what has already been produced as information
11 on this basis.

12 Q Well, Mr. Bouckhout, I
13 suggest to you that the major environmental input
14 into your program results from your multi-disciplinary
15 program, and the changes that may be produced by it.

16 A I don't say that this
17 is necessarily the major input. This is just one of
18 the methods that we have used to date to try and co-
19 ordinate and make sure that everybody has a chance
20 to look at the line then together.

21 Q Well, let me suggest
22 this, that if any significant environmental changes
23 in the route are going to be made, they are obviously
24 going to be made as a result of this multi-disciplinary
25 assessment that you're undertaking.

26 A They will be made as a
27 result of the multi-disciplinary assessment which is
28 undergoing this summer, as well as the result of any
29 other studies which we will conduct this fall and
30 winter.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q And I take it, therefore,
3 if that is going to be the major source of environmental
4 modifications in the route, it's unlikely that that
5 will be completed before the late spring or summer of
6 1976.

7 A We will not have completed
8 all of our work until that time, but I don't think it
9 necessarily follows that there is a great deal of
10 chance that there will be more major input as far as
11 -- well, not "input", let me rephrase that -- that
12 there will be great recommendations for change as a
13 result of work done in the other two seasons, namely
14 the winter season and the early spring season.

15 Q Isn't that sort of
16 pre-judging the effort?

17 A I don't think that's --
18 well, I suppose in a matter of speaking it's pre-
19 judging; it's simply my own opinion; I'm certainly
20 not going to stop the environmental people from making
21 any such recommendations.

22 Q Well, if there are to
23 be any but minor adjustments, such as Mr. Fawcett has
24 told us about, they are going to be found as a result
25 of the process you have now described as multi-discip-
26 linary review.

27 A As I said earlier, sir,
28 they would be defined by that process as well as by
29 a process when the environmental people are alone
30 in the field, when the geotechnical people are not

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 necessarily there. The multi-disciplinary program
3 is a program which we carried on this summer, and it
4 is not necessary to say, as I indicated earlier, that
5 we would do that again throughout all the biological
6 studies.

7 Q But the biologists aren't
8 going to make changes in the route without consulting
9 with the geotechnicians, are they?

10 A The change -- any changes
11 made in the route by Foothills, of course would not
12 be made by Foothills without having both groups involved.

13 Q Yes, so that what we may
14 say is that as long as these teams are at work there
15 is the prospect of substantial changes.
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

7 A That's right.

10 A That's right.

19 A The actual process in
20 the field is that either the physical or the
21 biological team might find a particular site or a
22 particular area which from their point of view could
23 warrant a revision or a refinement of the route in that
24 particular location. In that case, which ever
25 team finds this particular point, that team would
26 notify the other team and they would also be in a
27 position then to assess it from their particular
28 viewpoint. Beyond that the resolution lies with
29 Foothills, not with the consultants.

37 O Well, do I understand,

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 then that if the geotechnicians, which is the way
2 you describe the physical people, and the biologists
3 in the field are unable to agree on a revision,
4 that it is dealt with by Foothills?

5 A Whether they are
6 able to agree or not in the field, it is still dealt
7 with by Foothills.

8 Q And who at Foothills
9 has the power to determine whether this revision
10 will or will not be made?

11 A The next phase of the
12 process is that the biological team reports to me,
13 the geotechnical team reports to Mr. Fawcett, and
14 Mr. Fawcett and I then discuss the options open to
15 us with respect to any possible refinements of the
16 route.

17 Q Well, who decides?

18 A If we cannot at that
19 point make a joint decision between the two of us,
20 and in all cases I believe to date, we have
21 been able to, in that case then it goes further and
22 I would go to my immediate supervisor, Mr. Burrell
23 and Mr. Fawcett goes to his immediate supervisor
24 who is Mr. Mirosh.

25 Q So I take it that the
26 biological input, let me put this situation, if
27 the biologist in the field on a multi-disciplinary
28 trip wants a change, he indicates that to you and
29 indicates what the change should be?

30 A Yes, he would. He would

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 also indicate it to the geotechnical people in the
2 field.

3
4 Q Yes, and the geotechnical
5 people report to Mr. Fawcett that they either approve
6 of or reject that change?

7 A That is right.

8 Q Yes, and then you
9 and Mr. Fawcett debate it between yourselves?

10 A I wouldn't call it
11 debate . We certainly discuss it.

12 Q And if you fail to
13 agree, what happens?

14 A As I said, if we fail
15 to agree, then each of us takes our case to our
16 immediate supervisor.

17 Q Has that ever happened?

18 A No, it has not.

19 Q No. Well, now
20 when these changes are being debated, what is the
21 standard by which the judgment is made?

22 A It is obviously a very
23 difficult standard, there is no set standard, per se,
24 it would depend on the assessed possible repercussions
25 of both the revision as well as of the existing line
26 as it exists.

27 Q Well, is there any
28 other help you can give us on how these things are
29 decided? Who gives way?

30 A I don't think we have as
yet had any case where anybody had to give way. I

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 believe the philosophy of Foothills to date has
2 been that where I can point to an area which does
3 warrant a refinement of the route for a biological
4 reason, that Foothills has to date accepted it as
5 a reason and has accepted the revision.

6 Beyond that, not only do
7 we confront biological matters with actual route
8 location changes, but we have another option to
9 confront these types of issues with various other
10 protection measures which would include procedural
11 measures during construction and operations and
12 timing measures during construction. Therefore,
13 I assess how we could possibly cope with this problem,
14 whether it is possible to cope with it from the
15 point of view of these other protection measures
16 or whether it is a necessity to cope with it from
17 the point of view of location.

18 Q Well, do I understand
19 that no environmental alteration that you have
20 recommended has been refused?

21 A I don't think that that
22 is necessarily true.

23 Q Well, tell me one that
24 has been refused.

25 A I can't recall one to date,
26 sir. We are looking at a number now and we haven't
27 come to a final decision on these.

28 Q All right. Have any
29 substantial environmental recommendations been made
30 for a change?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Other than at the first
2 phase while we are still conducting the work in the
3 office, the recommendations regarding the denning
4 sites on the ~~Thunder~~ RIVER and the Travaillant Lake
5 area of course were accepted. As a result of
6 field programs we are looking at possibilities right
7 now, but we will wait for final decision on these
8 until we get the full input from the consultants.

9 Q So that we can take it
10 this way, that the effect of the environmentalists
11 on the route so far has been restricted to the
12 environmental assessment leading to the minor adjust-
13 ments that Mr. Fawcett described. You may have
14 an effect in the future, but that is the effect
15 you have had now?

16 A No, I think that we can
17 go a little bit further in that in that the effect
18 we have had to date and I would point to the Holmes
19 Creek instance as one, that the environmental
20 people had suggested that there is a possibility
21 there that we would be much better off to possibly
22 refine the route in that location.

23 Q But that change hasn't
24 been made.

25 A The change has not been
26 made, however, the effect has been that the geotechni-
27 cal people have actually initiated a drilling
28 program in an area where we suggested, the joint
29 geotechnical and environmental people suggested
30 the refinement might be possible and we will be in

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 a position then by the information from the biological
2 people and the geotechnical people this winter to
3 make the decisions since we will already have the
4 geotechnical information as well.

5 Q Well, let's just see if
6 I can get this question right.

7 Apart from the minor
8 adjustments done in the office, the environmental
9 work has produced to date no changes in the route?

10 A As a result of the
11 summer programs, if that's what you are speaking of.

12 Q As a result of anything.

13 A I would say, no -- has
14 produced the result of no changes which have been
15 finally accepted and drawn on the map and filed
16 so --

17 Q So no changes to date.

18 A That is the interpretation,
19 sir.

20 Q Well, now, Mr. Fawcett,
21 I take it from what you have said that you have
22 had no -- or I shouldn't say you, but Foothills
23 socio-economic consultants have as yet had no
24 input in the selection of the route?

25 WITNESS FAWCETT: A I
26 believe that there has been a certain amount of
27 considerations given to this, yes.

28 Q All right, who were
29 your socio-economic consultants?

30 A I believe that Mr.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Burrell is heading up that section of the panel and
2 I believe that he could answer that himself. I am
3 not sure who he is using.

4 Q Well, Mr, Fawcett,
5 you have told us how you picked the route, how you
6 received the minor adjustments from the geotechnicians
7 and the environmentalists. I take it that the
8 socio-economists whoever they are played no part
9 in that process because you didn't describe them.

10 A Initially on the corridor
11 section, no.

12 Q On the route selection
13 that you gave to the environmentalists and the
14 geotechnicians?

15 A I am not too familiar
16 with what they had given to the environmentalists
17 on that. I believe they work together as a
18 team.

19 Q Well, Mr. Fawcett,
20 you told us in your evidence that after the route had
21 been drawn by you, as a result of Mr. Drew's work
22 you gave the route on maps to the environmental
23 consultants at Lombard North.

24 A That is true.

25 Q And you gave it to the
26 geotechnicians at Klohn Leonoff?

27 A That is true.

28 Q Did you give it
29 to anybody else?

30 A Yes, John Ellwood

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 discussed this, I believe with the other members
2 of the environmental department who is John
3 Burrellof course, his superior.

4 Q Did you give it to
5 any socio-economist?

6 A I didn't, no.

7 Q Have you received
8 any input from any socio-economist?

9
10 Any suggestion?
11 Any change?

12 A Not as yet, no.

13 Q Not as yet and if
14 you were looking for a change who would you
15 expect to receive it from?

16 A Mr. Burrell

17 Q And you haven't
18 had any suggestions from him yet?

19 A Not as far as the
20 direct routing is concerned, no.

21 Q Not as far as the
22 route, the main route is concerned.

23 A No.

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Mr. Drew, in question 41
2 at page 24, you deal there, without reading it, of the
3 importance of procedures for field verification of
4 terrain typing and terrain sensitivity, and in the last
5 part of your answer to question 43, which is on page
6 27, as I understand it, you refer to some of the results
7 of the field checking that you have completed along
8 the route. Do I understand the intent of those
9 paragraphs when I summarize them that way?

10 WITNESS DREW: I'm not sure
11 what your intent is.

12 Q Well, have I summarized
13 them correctly?

14 A I think the summary is
15 too brief for that long a paragraph.

16 Q Well, point one, you have
17 emphasized, as I understand it, the importance of
18 field verification of terrain typing and sensitivity.

19 A That is correct.

20 Q And you have given us
21 some examples in your oral testimony and in the trans-
22 cribed testimony in question 43 of the results that
23 can be had from field checking?

24 A That is correct.

25 Q And I think you have
26 indicated that field checking sometimes confirms and
27 sometimes leads to minor modifications and sometimes
28 leads to substantial changes.

29 A That is correct.
30

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q And you have found that
2 field checking has done that not only for your work
3 but accidentally and happily for Dr. Mollard's work.

4 A That is correct.

5 Q How much of the terrain
6 typing along the route has been field checked?

7 A I was on this reconnais-
8 sance from May 25th to June 20th, during which I
9 field-checked the entire length of the corridor --
10 of the mainline corridor, from the Alberta border to
11 the Arctic coast, and also the short lateral routes
12 to the communities in the Mackenzie Valley. I have not
13 yet looked at routes to Pine Point and Yellowknife,
14 but intend to do so shortly.

15 Q Yes, and I take it that
16 this field checking involves what?

17 A In my case the field
18 checking involves -- well, first I prepare for it in
19 the office. I select points on the photos where I
20 feel that there apt to be exposures or apt to be
21 problems, points that I wish to look at on the
22 ground, and then we fly over the corridor in the
23 helicopter and I try to land or have him land as close
24 as I can to these points that I want to check, and
25 then I go on the ground, I go to these points, I
26 dig, if necessary, I pick up the material, I study
27 it with a hand lens, I may taste it, I make a thorough
28 examination --

29 Q What do you taste it for?

30 A Because sometimes there

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 are certain salts, if I found salt licks, for instance,
2 and to make sure they are salt I trust my tongue as
3 well as my eyes.

4 Q If the R.C.M.P. saw you
5 out there they'd probably arrest you.

6 A No R.C.M.P. are going
7 to find me out there, the bush-whacking is too tough.

8 Q All right, well the
9 essence of the exercise is picking out the points that
10 you want to field-check and getting there.

11 A Well, also as I fly
12 along I may see other things from the helicopter that
13 I want to check, and yes, and I do get to these key
14 locations as I said in my testimony. We map certain
15 units and if I can check these units at key locations
16 and see what their nature is, then I attribute those
17 characteristics to other parts of that unit or other
18 similar units.

19 Q How many spots did you
20 field check?

21 A Just a moment, I'll
22 look in my notes to see what my number is.

23 Q Yes.

24 A 170 on the first go-round.

25 Q And are you satisfied that
26 no further field checking is required to be done?

27 A No, I am not. I am going
28 to be doing the corridor again. I understand I have
29 permission to do it again next month.

30 Q Yes, and how many stops

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 do you anticipate you'll make then?

2 A I don't know, but perhaps
3 half as many to fill in the gaps, it depends upon the
4 time and the weather.

5 Q Yes.

6 A And also just how many
7 things I see that need to be checked, we'll be checking
8 I think in the opposite direction.

9 Q Having in mind the
10 impossibility of perfection, will that complete the
11 necessary field checking of terrain typing?

12 A Well, I don't know, that
13 of course is up to the client how long we go on with
14 this. It will be in very good shape by then, but like
15 you say, nothing is perfect and still you reach the
16 point of diminishing returns. We could go out again
17 next year and do some more and improve a slight bit,
18 but whether there would be enough improvement to make
19 it worthwhile, I can't say.

20 Q I see; and I take it
21 that this checking has produced a fair number of
22 changes in your terrain typing.

23 A Well, I'm not going to
24 go through on the photos and revise all the terrain
25 typing until I finish my field checking, then I'm
26 going to do it all at once, rather than go through
27 twice, just for economic reasons.

28 Q And I take it that what
29 you contemplate when you do it is either changes or
30 a range of modifications which will alter the terrain

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 map.

2 A That's only part of it.

3 One of the main reasons is just to describe the units,
4 and I want to see precisely what these units are made
5 out of, what the characteristics are. I want to check
6 their sensitivity in the field. I'm doing that as
7 well as revising the interpretations. In other words,
8 I'm trying to do everything when I'm there.

9 Q I take it that there
10 was no checking whatever -- it was not possible to do
11 any checking before the application was made.

12 A I'm not sure what date
13 the application was made. / ^Q Well, the application was
14 made in the spring of this year and I presume the
15 alignment sheets had to be printed before that. I
16 take it the alignment sheets that are in the application
17 show none of the results of your checking.

18 A That is correct, those
19 are the preliminary interpretations.

20 Q Yes. Now when will the
21 final alignment sheets be ready?

22 A I couldn't answer that.
23 The client would have to answer that.

24 Q Well, I take it that
25 you regard yourself as having at least one more trip
26 to make.

27 A I understand that I should
28 have three more trips, a helicopter checking of the
29 laterals to Yellowknife and Pine Point, a helicopter
30 checking of the mainline and its short laterals off

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
CrossExam by Scott

1 of it, and motor vehicle checking of parts of the
2 Yellowknife-Pine Points routes that are accessible to
3 the road.

4 Q And even with respect to
5 the extensive trip you've already made, none of those
6 alterations or modifications in the terrain typing
7 are before us?

8 A No, they aren't.

9 Q No. Are you able to give
10 us any estimate as to when complete terrain type maps
11 will be available?

12 A No. In the first place
13 I don't call these maps, I call them photomosaics

14 Q I'm sorry.

15 A And I don't know when
16 they will be available. Again that's up to the client
17 to set the timetable.

18 Q Mr. Mirosh, are these
19 check terrain type photomosiacs going to be filed in
20 due course when they're ready?

21 WITNESS MIROSH: Yes, I think
22 I could agree with that, they will be filed in due
23 course. We haven't decided at what stage they will be
24 filed at. It may be an intermediate stage.

25 Q Have you any timetable
26 as to when we may expect to have the check maps?

27 A Off the top of my head,
28 I would say within nine months.

29 Q Mr. Gillespie, in your
30 evidence at page 33 you refer to the first reconnaissance

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 that your company conducted in January, 1975, as a
2 result of which some revisions were made, and in the
3 answer to question 51 you refer particularly to one
4 of these revisions in the north and south approaches
5 to the Willowlake River, and you say that the route
6 was revised to avoid steep cross-slopes. Do I have
7 that all correctly?

8 WITNESS GILLESPIE: That's
9 correct, yes.

10 Q Now, that portion of the
11 route is shown on alignment sheet 0500-01. I wonder if
12 you'd get that before you?

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Is it time
14 for coffee? Well, let's stop for coffee.

15 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR 15 MINUTES)
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT: Q Well, Mr. Gillespie, do you have this alignment sheet in front of you now?

WITNESS GILLESPIE: A Yes, sir.

Q Now, the route on the map is the heavy black line of course.

A Yes.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Mr. Scott, excuse me a moment, could I just have that reference again, please.

MR. SCOTT: To the alignment sheet?

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Yes.

MR. SCOTT: Alignment sheet 0500-01.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Thank you.

MR. SCOTT: Q And the highway is the thin black line to the east, I guess -- I am sorry west of the line.

A That is correct.

Q Now, you told us that a revision was made at the Willowlake River to avoid steep cross slopes. Now, does this map show the line before or after the revision?

A Yes, the steep cross slopes I am referring to are on the north bank of the river approximately at mile 593 and

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 it's in terrain unit DR DF DR.

2 Q So that we will
3 be able to identify that on the map, they are
4 to the -- they are toward the top of the page
5 above the line, is that correct?

6 A No, towards the lefthand
7 side of the page. When I refer to north I sort of mean
8 along the pipeline route.

9 Q I see . Well, now,
10 does that show the revised line?

11 A Yes, that is the revised
12 line.

13 Q All right, now can you
14 tell me where the line was approximately before
15 the revision?

16 A Yes, I think in that
17 area it went, it probably passed a half inch
18 towards the top of the page, that would be to
19 the east, in a straight line.

20 Q So that at the
21 point of crossing you are saying that the original
22 line would be on the paper a half inch further up
23 the river?

24 A No, a half inch further
25 away from the river.

26 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Maybe
27 we should decide which river.

28 A Well, I am sorry,
29 the Mackenzie River.

30 MR. SCOTT: Would you draw

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 the line --

2 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
3 wait a minute, isn't this the Willowlake River up
4 here?

5 MR. SCOTT: Yes.

6 A Yes.

7 Q Do I understand that
8 what you are describing is that if you begin at the
9 left of the page at about mile 591 and take your
10 finger up to the line, what you are saying is
11 that you --

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse
13 me, let's do that again.

14 MR. SCOTT: Q Beginning
15 at mile 591, Mr. Gillespie, can you show us where
16 the original route went?

17 A It is approximately
18 here. Starting at mile 591 in the north and ending
19 about 594 in the south and this revision is on
20 the north side of the Willowlake River. And the
21 purpose of the revision was to avoid very
22 steep side slopes and bedrock ridges which would
23 have to be crossed by the pipeline.

24 Q Was there any alteration
25 as a result of that in the river crossing at the -- of
26 Willow River?

27 A No.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Now
29 the original route that you have marked in pencil
30 on the map before you, is that the route that

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Arctic Gas still intends to use?

2 A I really don't know, sir.

3 MR. SCOTT: Q Well, now
4 in the course of making that change, was there any
5 environmental input?

6 A Not to my knowledge.

7 Q Mr. Bouckhout?

8 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: A Not
9 to my knowledge, sir, since this change was made
10 prior to the field program.

11 Q Well, has that revision
12 been reviewed or analysed?

13 A Yes, I am sure it has.

14 Q Well, now would you
15 tell me at that area what are the points of environmental
16 or socio - economic concern?

17 A I cannot tell you, sir,
18 I am sure that our environmental consultants have
19 looked at it, but I cannot personally tell you
20 what the points of concern are there.

21 Q Well, do you know if
22 there was any environmental concern about that
23 change?

24 A No, I do not. But
25 I am sure if there had been I would have been
26 aware of it.

27 Q I beg your pardon?

28 A I just added that I am
29 sure that had there been any environmental
30 concerns as a result of our environmental people's

Mirosh, Fawcett, BOuckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 look at that particular area, I would have been made
2 aware of it.

3 Q And you weren't made aware
4 of any.

5 A That is correct

6 Q So therefore I may
7 conclude that there were no environmental concerns
8 expressed to you?

9 A There were none expressed
10 to me as a result of the programs that had been
11 carried carried out to date.

12 Q Would any socio-economic
13 concerns be expressed to you or would that be
14 handled by somebody else.

15 A They would not be
16 expressed to me.

17 Q Did you ever hear
18 about any of those?

19 A No, I have not.

20 Q Do you know the location
21 of the site of Fort Alexander with relation to
22 this line?

23 A No, sir, I don't.

24 Q Have you ever heard anything
25 about how the line runs now in relation to Fort
26 Alexander?

27 A No.

28 Q Have you ever heard
29 of Fort Alexander?

30 A Yes.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Do you know where
2 it is?

3 A No.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
5 I have never heard of it, where is it?

6 MR. SCOTT: Well, it is located
7 as I understand it on the north bank of the Willow-
8 lake between the highway and the pipeline.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Between
10 the highway, between the line on the map.

11 MR. SCOTT: Between the
12 line on the map which will be the highway, perhaps,
13 and the pipeline.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Perhaps.

15 MR. SCOTT: Perhaps.

16 Q What is the scale of
17 this map, Mr. Gillespie?

18 WITNESS GILLESPIE: A This
19 map is approximately one inch equals 2,500 feet.

20 Q So I take it at the
21 point where the pipeline crosses the Willowlake it
22 is approximately 2000 feet from the proposed highway?

23 A Yes.

24 Q Yes, and Mr. Bouckhout,
25 did you ever hear that Fort Alexander was precisely
26 at that junction?

27 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: A I have
28 never heard that, sir, however, our archaeological
29 consultants will certainly be looking into that
30 once we have defined the route in terms, of from the

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 environmental point of view in terms of putting the
2 additional archaeological information into it.

3 Q Well, I take it that
4 whatever you may do in the future, there has been
5 no environmental assessment that relates to that
6 juxtaposition of the highway, the line and this particu-
7 lar site, Fort Alexander?

8 A Our archaeological
9 consultants have looked at this line and they have
10 indicated I believe to date that there are no
11 immediate changes to be made from an archaeological
12 point of view.

13 Q They have expressed
14 no concern?

15 A Not to my knowledge
16 to me specifically, sir.

17 Q Yes, do you know
18 anything about the location of historical grave sites
19 on that particular portion of the route?

20 A Personally, no, I do
21 not.

22 Q Have you ever heard
23 anything from your archaeologists or anybody else
24 about the impact of the pipeline and the proposed
25 highway on those grave sites?

26 A Not personally.

27 Q Have you heard any com-
28 plaints about the location of the line with
29 regard to that?

30 A Not personally.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Do you know where the
2 native people live in relation to this pipeline and
3 the crossing?

4 A No, I don't

5 Q Have you any idea where
6 the adjacent community is?

7 A No, I don't. I
8 believe that is a matter for the socio-economic people.

9 Q Have you heard anything
10 from the socio-economic people as to where the
11 native people at or near this crossing live?

12 A I have not personally,
13 no.

14 Q Have you made any assess-
15 ment whatever in placing the line, and I ^{presume} approving
16 the placement of the line there of the effect it
17 may have on the wildlife or the people?

18 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well,
19 Mr. Commissioner, I think Mr. Bouckhout has said
20 again and again that he doesn't have anything to
21 do with the socio-economic input. I think that is
22 a fair question with respect to the wildlife, but
23 I don't think it is with respect to the location
24 of the community.

25 MR. SCOTT: All right, I
26 withdraw the question.

27 Q Have you made any
28 inquiries to determine where the domestic fishing done
29 by native people is done at or near this crossing?

30 A Yes, we did do some

MIrosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 work on that during preparation of our submission
2 and that work is ongoing now.

3 Q Well, where is it done?

4 A I cannot point it
5 specifically, sir.

6 Q Have you heard any
7 complaints about the location of the line with regard
8 to the location of the native fishing?

9 A I have not heard
10 any specific complaints, per se, sir, however, I could
11 say that within our submission we indicate that
12 we are continuing to upgrade our information according
13 to the location of the fishing locations and we
14 have said that we will avoid them, if we do not
15 avoid them the final alignment there will be --
16 the final alignment and timing will be as a result
17 of the discussions with the people who do fish
18 in these locations.

19 Q Do you know anything
20 about the location of a particularly important
21 trapping area at or near the juxtaposition of the
22 line and the river?

23 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well,
24 again, I think this is a socio-economic matter,
25 Mr. Commissioner.

26 MR. SCOTT: All right.

27 THE COMMISSIONER: I think
28 it is on the line, isn't it -- forgive the
29 expression, that trapping is an activity conducted
30 by humans with the object of obtaining --

1 MR. HOLLINGOWRTH: Well,
2 I think that it is on the line. It is a fair
3 question to be asked if he knows if there is a fur
4 bearing area in that vicinity, but I don't think
5 it is with respect to areas of trapline.

6 MR. SCOTT: All right, let
7 me ask you if you know anything about the location
8 at or near the juxtaposition of the proposed line
9 and the river, of a proposed highway rest stop, that
10 has to do with people.

11 A I do not specifically,
12 sir. I would have to check with our consultants
13 on that issue.

14 Q Have you heard any com-
15 plaints about the location of the line bearing in
16 mind the proposed location of that facility?

17 A To date I have not.
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Do you know the location
2 of a proposed recreational facility near the location
3 of your proposed crossing in the river?

4 A No, I don't.

5 Q Have you heard any
6 complaints about the juxtaposition of this crossing
7 at Willow River and a proposed recreational area for
8 people?

9 A I have heard no complaints
10 to date. However, our consultants will be looking
11 into this.

12 Q Yes.

13 A Further.

14 Q Well, Mr. Bouckhout, would
15 it be fair to say with regard to this crossing that
16 whatever work you will be doing in the future, and I
17 am certain it will be extensive, there has been
18 virtually no environmental analysis of which you are
19 aware in this particular area.

20 A No, I don't think that's
21 fair. I know there has been analysis of that area.
22 I don't know if there has been analysis of those
23 sites in particular.

24 Q Well, what does your
25 analysis of that area tell us about the location of
26 the route?

27 A I would think, sir, it
28 tells us the relationship of the route to the broad
29 wildlife areas in the region.

30 Q Well now, Mr. Bouckhout,

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 as I understand it, your input into route selection
2 and the reason you're on this panel is because you
3 are in charge of co-ordinating the analysis of envir-
4 onmental sensitivities in regards to the placement of
5 the route, is that correct?

6 A that's essentially correct.

7 Q Now have you done as yet
8 any analysis of the environmental sensitivities in
9 this particular area?

10 A I could not say, sir,
11 whether our environmental consultant, which is in the
12 field right now, has in fact done so, but I assure
13 you it will be done.

14 Q Well, I know it will be
15 done, but has it been done? Have you had any input
16 whatever into the location of this route at this place?

17 A From an actual site
18 specific point of view, that would have to be left to
19 further input from the summer program.

20 Q Have you had any environ-
21 mental input whatever with regard to the placement of
22 this line on the whole page?

23 A Yes, I believe we have.

24 Q I beg your pardon?

25 A I believe we have.

26 Q Well, what has your
27 environmental input been, and what knowledge have you
28 had of the area?

29 A Our environmental input
30 as I indicated before, was from the point of view of

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 investigating existing literature when this particular
2 route was being defined on a map, and of course there
3 is a follow-up, and it is a continuing process.

4 Q Well, all right, I know
5 it's a continuing process. I want to know now what your
6 environmental people knew about this area? I've asked
7 you four or five things that you didn't know about. What
8 did you know about it?

9 A I cannot give you a specific
10 list at this moment, sir.

11 Q Well, would that be
12 typical of the extent of your knowledge on other frames
13 in this series of maps?

14 A I don't know, I couldn't
15 say, sir.

16 Q Well, let me put it to
17 you quite frankly, Mr. Bouckhout, you had some input
18 with respect to minor revisions about which Mr. Fawcett
19 has told us, I put it to you that your environmental
20 assessment is yet to be done.

21 A Certainly the site
22 specific detail of our environmental assessment is
23 being done.

24 Q Apart from the broadest
25 analysis of the Mackenzie Valley, your assessment of
26 this pipeline route as drawn by Mr. Fawcett is
27 substantially yet to be done.

28 A I don't know what your
29 definition, sir, is of "broadest". We have certainly
30 concentrated on the location of the line right now, and

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 we have indicated that we are into the site specific
2 stage now, and that certainly will not be completed
3 just within the next month or two. We certainly intend
4 to continue that process along.

5 Q Would you agree with me
6 that your environmental assessment of the location of
7 this route is a task that you're doing now and is not
8 yet completed?

9 A I would say we are doing
10 it now. We have done it, and I would agree that it's
11 not completed, yes.

12 Q Well now, Mr. Fawcett,
13 I refer you to question No. 17 on page 11.

14 WITNESS FAWCETT: Yes.

15 Q And in your answer there
16 you refer to a number of meetings which were held with
17 the Department of Public Works concerning the location
18 of the pipeline in relation to the Mackenzie Highway.

19 A Yes sir.

20 Q And you say:

21 "A few conflicts between the two proposed routes "
22 that is the highway and the line,

23 "were solved."

24 Can you give us any examples of these conflicts?

25 A We had one conversation
26 with them that changed the location of the proposed
27 line at Saline River. They indicated that they would
28 be putting the cut in on the south bank and our location
29 crossed where they would be putting the cut in, I believe
30 we moved away about 800 feet from that. We had a

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 conflict at the river between two mountains. We
2 moved away about 500 feet. We had a conflict on a
3 route change that they contemplated at Little Chicago,
4 our last conversation with them that they would move
5 away 300 feet to accommodate us in our location.

6 Q Yes. Now were these
7 conflicts resolved in the actual meetings that you had?

8 A Yes, they were mutually
9 resolved.

10 Q And who for Foothills
11 participated in those meetings?

12 A I mainly.

13 Q Anybody else?

14 A Not on the meetings with
15 them in Edmonton, no.

16 Q And so I take it that
17 what happened is that you heard the differences and
18 made a decision as to alteration.

19 A I was made aware of
20 them and we discussed it when I returned, and we
21 mutually agreed that we could make these changes.

22 Q Yes, well who did you
23 discuss them with?

24 A I discussed them with the
25 other groups at different meetings that we held in
26 Foothills.

27 Q Well, did you discuss them
28 with Mr. Bouckhout?

29 A I believe this was made
30 before Mr. Bouckhout joined us.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Did you discuss them with
2 any environmental consultant?

3 A I discussed them with
4 our group meetings with John Ellwood and myself and a
5 few of the others.

6 Q Well, what did the envir-
7 onmental people have to say about the Saline change?

8 A I'm not aware, if you're
9 talking about in-house there was nothing said about it.

10 Q One way or the other?

11 A It would not produce any
12 concern.

13 Q Was it asserted that that
14 was a change that was satisfactory from an en vironment-
15 al point of view?

16 A It was satisfactory to us
17 as a group, yes.

18 Q Was it satisfactory to
19 the en vironmentalists?

20 A To our group environmen-
21 talists, yes.

22 Q Did they express any
23 concerns about sensitivities in that area?

24 A No, the reason that we
25 were attempting to move out of Little Chicago was
26 because of an en_vironmental sensitivity. The location
27 of the highway would put us across some thermokarsting
28 lakes and on this location we felt that we would like
29 to have the highway moved further in so that we could
30

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 accommodate ours out of the thermokarst lakes.

2 Q Were any concerns expressed
3 by your environmentalists about the sensitivity --
4 environmental sensitivities associated with that
5 particular change?

6 A This was produced from
7 that discussion that we had.

8 Q Are you talking about
9 the Saline River?

10 A I'm talking about Little
11 Chicago.

12 Q Well, let's talk about
13 the Saline River. Did the environmentalists express
14 any concerns about sensitivities in that area?

15 A Not to my knowledge, no.

16 Q Did the Department of
17 Public Works and you discuss anything apart from
18 changes that were rendered necessary because of
19 engineering conflicts?

20 A Not to my knowledge, no.

21 Q Well now, I note that
22 the community lateral, the major one that goes to
23 Yellowknife and Pine Point apparently is to be suspen-
24 ded from four highway bridges, is that correct?

25 A This was one of the
26 areas that we were looking at, yes.

27 Q Yes, and those bridges
28 are at Rae, at the Kakisa River, and the Hay River and
29 at the Buffalo River.

30 A That is correct, yes.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q Have you had any discussions
2 with any of the responsible government authorities
3 respecting that mode of transporting gas?

4 A I believe that Mr. Mirosh
5 might be able to handle that better. He carried that
6 further than I did.

7 Q All right.

8 WITNESS MIROSH: Yes sir, we
9 did have discussions with the Department and --

10 Q Which department is
11 this?

12 A Department of Public
13 Works, and we have obtained from them, drawings of
14 their structural construction of the bridges. We have
15 made preliminary designs for the crossings, and are
16 in the process of submitting these to the department
17 for their assessment.

18 Q All right, are they
19 satisfied that the gas should be carried by the
20 bridges in this fashion?

21 A In the discussions we've
22 had to date, they've showed no apprehension.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Showed no
24 apprehension?

25 A Correct.

26 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Gillespie,
27 I refer you to question 44 on page 27 where Mr. Drew
28 referred to his terrain typings, and I think he said
29 it was more reconnaissance type, faster, and an in-
30 expensive tool providing the foundation for the more

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 detailed and exacting geotechnical soils and engineer-
2 ing studies upon which final decisions are made. I
3 take it that you agree with that general observation?

4 WITNESS GILLESPIE: Yes.

5 Q And in your evidence you
6 refer to some of the studies that you are doing. I
7 see no mention of the preparation of a soils map of the
8 route and facilities.
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Well, we have considerable
2 amount of data from existing test hole information
3 which is available to us, and at some later stage
4 we will be doing additional drilling at site specific
5 spots. At the present time we are drilling river
6 crossings, some typical landslide areas, and some
7 typical drainage areas. This certainly isn't the end
8 of the drilling, it's really just an initial stage
9 and there will be more drilling to confirm soil con-
10 ditions in the various sections of the line.

11 Q Well, are you going to
12 make a soil map of the route?

13 A A soil map as such? No.
14 I really don't know what you mean by "a soil map", sir.

15 Q A detailed soil analysis
16 of the route mapped.

17 A Well yes, we will be
18 doing a detailed analysis of the route from the soils
19 data. In some sections of the line there probably is
20 sufficient soils information available. In areas of
21 different types of terrain which could be classed as
22 sensitive, there will be many addition -- or much more
23 additional drilling required. In terrain types which
24 perhaps could be classes as less sensitive, there
25 probably is enough information available, there is,
26 we know, a range of soil, ice, and characteristics
27 in these different terrain types, and it's true that
28 we may be doing more work on these things.

29 Q Well, let me ask you
30 this. Are you going to do a sub-division of Mr. Drew's

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 map that shows the soils located from place to place
2 along the route?

3 A No, I think that as Mr.
4 Drew says, the terrain typing is really for reconnais-
5 sance, and I think as soon as we have a line pretty
6 well established, we will be doing drilling in these
7 various areas really to confirm terrain types, or to
8 confirm soil conditions, and we're more interested
9 from a geotechnical point of view in soil conditions
10 rather than terrain types. We cannot design a pipeline
11 and a facility, or do a stability analysis on terrain
12 typing. We have to have the detailed information avail-
13 able, which can only come from drilling.

14 Q What did you mean when
15 you said when you have the line established?

16 A Well, we're in the process
17 of making minor revisions now, and I think that each
18 drill hole that's put in, or each reconnaissance that
19 is made will more accurately re-define the line, or
20 define the line.

21 Q Mr. Fawcett, I refer you
22 to question 25 on page 14 of your evidence, in which
23 you describe in your answer, beginning at the top of
24 the page the work that is under way that will be
25 completed by the end of the summer. Is that correct?

26 WITNESS FAWCETT: That is
27 correct.

28 Q Yes. Now, one of the things
29 that you have under way that will be completed by the
30 end of the summer is specific crossing sites of all

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 rivers and streams located along the proposed pipeline
2 route. How many of those, approximately, are there?

3 A I believe there is about
4 32 in all, with about 12 majors, including 12 majors.

5 Q Are you suggesting that
6 there are 32 rivers to be crossed the length of this
7 pipeline?

8 A That would include the
9 creeks and major streams, I believe.

10 Q Is that your information
11 about the number of rivers that will have to be crossed
12 from Alberta to the Arctic coast?

13 A That will require design,
14 I assume I am correct in that.

15 Q None of the others are
16 going to be designed?

17 A I think if you refer to
18 Mr. Gillespie he might be able to tell you what
19 their intentions are because he designs those.

20 Q The reason -- before I
21 refer to Mr. Gillespie -- the reason that I am concerned
22 is that in your evidence you say that:

23 "Specific crossing sites of all rivers and
24 streams located along the proposed pipeline
25 route."

26 Now should that be amended to say that you're going
27 to do that work with respect to how many?

28 A Your definition of
29 "streams", perhaps it could be amended to the 32
30 that I referred to.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q All right. Well, would
3 it be correct to say then that you've selected 32
4 rivers for which you are going to do specific crossing
5 sites by the end of the summer?

6 A I believe that this is
7 correct, yes.

8 Q And in addition to that
9 by the end of the summer you're going to have site
10 specific locations of all ancillary facility sites.

11 A This is the wharf sites
12 and stockpile sites that we're doing at the moment.

13 Q And construction pads?

14 A No, not construction
15 pads.

16 Q Will that be done?

17 A That's on compressor
18 stations which don't form part of the ancillary
19 facility sites.

20 Q When is that going to
21 be done?

22 A I'm not definite yet.

23 Q I beg your pardon?

24 A I can't be definite on
25 that yet.

26 Q Well, that will not be
27 done by the end of the summer?

28 A Oh no, not the compressor
29 stations.

30 Q So by the end of the

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 summer we won't have any specific information on the
2 precise location of the compressor stations.

3 A No.

4 Q How about borrow sites?

5 A No.

6 Q When are we going to get
7 specific information on their location?

8 A I believe to have that
9 confirmed would require a considerable amount of
10 drilling, and this would be done at a later stage.

11 Q I am sure it will require
12 a substantial amount of work, but can you tell us when
13 the Inquiry and the Energy Board will receive specific
14 information on the location of those borrow sites?

15 A I can't at this moment,
16 no.

17 Q How many of the 32 rivers
18 are going to be drilled?

19 A Could I refer that to
20 Mr. Gillespie?

21 Q By all means.

22 WITNESS GILLESPIE: We're
23 not proposing to drill 32 crossings during this period.
24 We're drilling the major crossings which would con-
25 trol the location of the pipeline. These are the major
26 control points, and I think there's probably eight or
27 ten rivers being drilled in this program during this
28 summer.

29 Q What, if anything, is
30 happening at the other 24?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Well, we don't consider
2 these major crossings, we've looked at them on the
3 ground and we do not consider there's any really
4 serious geotechnical problem that could not be -- it
5 will -- these minor crossings will not affect the
6 location of the pipeline, is what I'm trying to say.

7 Q But I take it with
8 respect to the eight rivers, you're going to drill in
9 the summer, that at the conclusion of that exercise
10 you will be able to define the specific crossings, as
11 Mr. Fawcett has indicated.

12 A Right.

13 Q How about the other 24?

14 A Well, as I said, we've
15 looked at these in detail on the ground and we do
16 not consider there's a serious geotechnical problem
17 there, and the crossings of these streams will be as
18 shown pretty well on the mosaics right now.

19 Q When is the environmental
20 input into the precise locations of these crossings
21 going to be achieved?

22 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: The
23 environmental input into the precise crossings, of
24 course, is partially under way right now. We are look-
25 ing at the crossings as they appear on the alignment
26 sheets, and where any revisions are suggested by
27 geotechnical reasons or other reasons, certainly the
28 environmental people will look at these new crossing
29 locations.

30 Q Is that part of the

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 multi-disciplinary exercise?

2 A I suppose you would call
3 it that in that environmental people would be reacting
4 to the geotechnical people. However, it is not
5 necessary that they both be on-site at that particular
6 time.

7 Q Yes. How much drilling
8 this summer will be done to ascertain the site specific
9 location of ancillary facility sites?

10 WITNESS GILLESPIE: There is
11 nothing planned at this time, sir.

12 Q Will that be done? Will
13 plans for that be made later?

14 A Well, I can't really
15 answer that but I think that I understand there are
16 some plans available, or plans for additional drilling.
17 But perhaps Mr. Mirosh could clarify this point.

18 WITNESS MIROSH: Yes sir, any
19 facilities which we would plan to install will be
20 drilled in the future. These will include stations,
21 wharf-sites, stock pile sites, operations and mainten-
22 ance facilities.

23 Q Well, Mr. Fawcett, you
24 have told us that all that work is under way and that
25 in addition further down on page 14, that you will be
26 constructing new control mosaics , you will be doing
27 low level photography of all river crossings.

28 WITNESS FAWCETT: That's true.

29 Q Does that mean all or
30 32 or 8?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A That means all that we
3 have planned out of this 32.

4 Q Well, does it mean 32 or
5 does it mean eight?

6 A I believe it's 32.

7 Q And that you will be
8 doing interval contouring with respect to river crossing
9 designs.

10 A That's correct.

11 Q How many river crossings?

12 A We're doing that on all
13 32 roughly, I believe.

14 Q Yes, and when is all this
15 work going to be done and available?

16 A We have the photographs
17 pretty well completed on the high level, which is the
18 1,000 foot river crossings are being done starting
19 this next week. We contemplate going into orthophoto-
20 mosaic construction about the 1st of October.

21 Q Well, I understood your
22 evidence in transcribed form to be that this program
23 was under way and would be completed by the end of
24 the summer. When will the total program be available?

Q All right, the route

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 that is not the Arctic Gas route has 200 miles at the
2 top, 200 miles at the bottom and approximately
3 490 miles of community laterals.

4 A I agree.

5 Q Yes, so that the
6 community lateral project is a very substantial
7 proportion of the different pipeline from the
8 Arctic Gas application?

9 A Yes.

10 Q And I take it that
11 it is a project that has been well publicized?

12 A I am not sure.

13 Q Well, now --

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Arctic
15 Gas has heard about it.

16 MR. SCOTT: Q I take it,
17 would it be correct to say that the process that you
18 followed in selecting route, the mainline route,
19 was followed in exactly the same way in selecting
20 the community laterals?

21 A I think I'd reverse that.
22 We did the mainline route first.

23 Q All right, well, let's
24 take the Yellowknife community lateral as an example,
25 as the most important one. Do I understand that the
26 process of selecting a route was conducted in the
27 same way as the process you have described in selecting
28 the mainline route?

29 A Yes, it was done in the
30 same way. I think this is true of a lot of the

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 transportation system right-of-ways that we would
2 be involved in. Initially this is done in all cases.

3 Q But you would in
4 planning the Yellowknife lateral, have selected
5 control points in the same way you have described
6 earlier?

7 A That is true,

8 Q Yes, and you would have
9 selected a fifteen mile corridor --

10 A That is true, also.

11 Q And you would have
12 come down in the same way you described in a three
13 mile corridor.

14 A I'll agree.

15 Q And then you would have
16 come to Mr. Fawcett drawing a line on the map in
17 the way you described with the mainline corridor.

18 A After we had the
19 terrain typing, that was true, yes.

20 Q And you would have
21 along the way the same inputs.

22 A That is true also.

23 Q And when you had drawn
24 the line on the three mile corridor to Yellowknife,
25 you would have referred that line to Klohn Leonoff
26 and the environmental consultants?

27 A This is true.

28 Q And did they make some
29 minor adjustments with respect to that line as
30 well?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A We've had the adjustments
2 made by Klohn Leonoff given to us and we've incorporated
3 them into the final routing.

4 Q Yes, and were they
5 what we would call minor adjustments?

6 A I believe so.

7 Q And how about the
8 environmentalists, have they suggested minor
9 adjustments?

10 A It was referred to them
11 and I believe that they are carrying ongoing studies
12 to verify that.

13 Q Well, have the
14 environmentalists made any revisions in your line
15 to Yellowknife and Pine Point?

16 A Not as yet, no.

17 Q Well, Mr. Bouckhout,
18 what do you say about this?

19 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: A What
20 Mr. Fawcett has said, sir, is true, we have not
21 not made any revisions in the Yellowknife lateral
22 line. We appreciate that the data base for that
23 particular area is considerably less than the
24 data base for the mainline and we are currently
25 undergoing studies which I might indicate are much
26 more intensive studies than for the mainline route
27 to look at the location that has been drawn to date
28 relative to environmental matters.

29 Q Mr. Gillespie, has
30 any drilling been done on the Yellowknife lateral?

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 WITNESS GILLESPIE: A No,
3 sir.

4 Q Is any proposed?

5 A Not at this stage,
6 no.

7 Q Mr. Drew, have you
8 already checked this section or is it one of the
9 ones that you are going to do in the next survey?

10 WITNESS DREW: A No, this is
11 one that is coming up very shortly. No, I have
12 only checked the mainline and the short laterals
13 from it so far.

14 Q Yes, so the remain
15 type checking on this portion of the lateral requires
16 to be done.

17 A Yes, that's right.

18 Q When do you think that
19 that will be done?

20 A September.

21 Q Well, MR. Bouckhout, has
22 any preliminary analysis been made of the environmental
23 sensitivities on the Yellowknife lateral?

24 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: A We have
25 looked at the routing, however, as I indicated, sir,
26 the data base there is very skimpy and I might say
27 that I am not confident that we have done the
28 final job in that case and certainly we all appreciate
29 that and are carrying on studies now to attempt to
30 generate the data base which was necessary.

Q Are you satisfied with

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 the general routing?

2 A I could say that I am
3 satisfied with the general routing from the point of
4 view that Mr. Fawcett has done it, but I can't say
5 that I am satisfied from the point of view that
6 we have completed our environmental input into that
7 routing.

8 Q Well, would you agree
9 with me that for this 490 miles, over half of your
10 new pipeline, a third of the entire pipeline, no
11 environmental assessment has been made at all of
12 any consequence to this stage?

13 A Yes, I would agree,

14 Q And that, I take it ,
15 is why there is no environmental material filed
16 whatever with respect to the lateral?

17 A That is correct.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: The
19 environmental assessment on the mainline has not
20 been done either.

21 A I didn't say that, sir.

22 Q I thought you said
23 earlier that that had not been done.

24 A Environmental assessment
25 has been done on the mainline. It is a matter of
26 getting down to site specifics and definition and
27 I suppose it gets down to the semantic problem of
28 what constitutes an environmental assessment. We
29 certainly have assessed it from the data base and
30 we are now assessing it from our field studies, so

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 it's a phasic process narrowing down to site specifics.

2 Q Well, didn't you agree
3 with me, Mr. Bouckhout, that it substantially
4 remained to be done on the mainline?

5 A I don't recall having
6 agreed to the substantially to be done.

7 Q Well, let me ask you
8 now, that apart from making some minor revisions
9 to Mr. Fawcett's line, there have been no changes
10 advanced or recommended or implemented by the
11 environmentalists on the mainline.

12 A Since the line has been
13 drawn, sir, we have not accepted any changes as
14 such. I agree that much has to be done.

15 Q The business of
16 advancing changes, negotiating changes or accepting
17 Mr. Fawcett's line remains by the environmentalists
18 to be done.

19 A Yes, I would say as a
20 result of the summer programs, etc., yes.

21 Q All right, now, coming
22 to the lateral you told us that there was no en-
23 vironmental volume and I take it that there is no
24 environmental map filed either here or before the
25 National Energy Board.

26 A That is correct.

27 Q The alignment sheets
28 for the laterals show no geotechnical information
29 whatever, isn't that correct?

30 A I would refer that

Mirsoh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 question.

2 WITNESS MIROSH: A That
3 is correct, there was drilling done on that
4 portion.

5 Q Yes, and there is
6 no drilling done or shown on any map filed either
7 here or at the National Energy Board.

8 A Correct for that portion.

9 Q And I take it therefore,
10 it would be correct to say that for this 490 miles
11 what you present to the Inquiry is substantially
12 a line that Mr. Fawcett in his office has drawn on
13 a map. Isn't that correct?

14 A Well, I believe Mr.
15 Fawcett certainly has drawn the line. There had
16 been discussions of routing with Mr. Fawcett and
17 others, albeit of a preliminary nature.

18 Q But it's drawing a
19 map in your office. No one's even set foot on it,
20 have they?

21 A The program to investi-
22 gate that portion of the line is being undertaken
23 this September.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
25 Mr. Mirosh, we understand that Foothills only
26 recently filed its application, but we want to know
27 where you are at in this thing and if you haven't
28 anyone from Foothills set foot on the 490 miles of
29 laterals -- lateral lines, we want that clearly
30 understood if that is really where this thing has

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross- Exam by Scott

1 gotten to. We know that you have got work underway
2 and you are planning further work, but we are here to
3 examine the impact that your line will have and
4 we appreciate that you've opened up another area
5 of impact by proposing these laterals.

6 Now, we understand the
7 reason why Mr. Blair has put them forward, because
8 he feels that the people of the North should be
9 supplied with gas at rates subsidized by southern
10 customers. We understand that from his evidence.
11 But if those laterals are built, there will be an
12 impact on the environment along an additional
13 490 miles and if Foothills has not had anyone on
14 the ground along the route, we want to know that
15 now so that we understand how far you have gotten.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 A Sir, perhaps I could
2 amplify a little bit more on what we have done. There
3 have been over-flights of the route following preliminary
4 drilling of lines on maps. There have been investigat-
5 ions of the river crossings by car, and that's how the
6 decision resulted to consider crossing on the bridges;
7 but as to detailed field work, that is coming up this
8 September.

9 Q I take it that the loca-
10 tion of the construction, the geotechnical problems
11 associated with this lateral will obviously affect the
12 cost of installing it. Is my question so obvious that
13 it hardly needs to be answered?

14 A Yes sir, although I might
15 explain that the Yellowknife-Pine Point portion of
16 the line is the most o r the portion of our proposal
17 which is most similar to that which we have faced in
18 Northern Albertá. So that in a sense our concerns are
19 not as great as they are in the portions where there
20 is permafrost.

21 Q Well, what I'm concerned
22 about is you may have observed that it has been asser-
23 ted that persons at Yellowknife and other communities
24 will save \$500 a year for gas if the Foothills project
25 is supported and approved. Now I put it to you that
26 without knowing precisely where the line will go, how
27 it will go, how it will be constructed, it's imprudent
28 to say the least to make that kind of assertion. What
29 do you say, Mr. Mirosh?

A.

Well sir, we

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouchhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 have based our capital costs upon working with consul-
2 tants who in turn have worked with a contractor to
3 determine the implications of constructing that portion
4 of the line, and as I have stated earlier, their
5 opinion was that that line in majority is similar to
6 what they are familiar with in Northern Alberta, so
7 that in coming to capital cost assessments, it was
8 not that imprudent of us to take that approach.

9 Q Do you think that the hard
10 rock around Yellowknife looks like Northern Alberta?

11 A No sir, but there is
12 rock in Ontario and these contractors and consultants
13 have built through hard rock before.

14 Q Do you know whether
15 or not there is permafrost along these laterals?

16 A I would suspect there
17 might be some permafrost, but I'm not aware of it.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Drew
19 wanted to add something.

20 MR. SCOTT: I'm sorry.

21 WITNESS DREW: Yes, there
22 are permafrost in places, in what do they call it,
23 discontinuous permafrost zone, and of course they have
24 had problems here in Yellowknife with buildings,
25 because of permafrost in pockets between the bedrock
26 hummocks. There is also, I believe, isolated occurren-
27 ces of permafrost in Northern Alberta and in North-
28 eastern Alberta. Of course you have the Canadian Shield
29 with hard rock just as you have here in Yellowknife.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, but

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 haven't built pipelines in North-eastern Alberta, have
2 you? The Alberta Gas Trunk Line goes to the north-
3 west sector of Alberta, but there's no permafrost there,
4 is there?

5 WITNESS MIROSH: Well, sir,
6 I'm not entirely certain but I would suspect that there
7 may have been some permafrost on the line up to Zama
8 and the permafrost may have been encountered in the
9 line which Westcoast has built into the Northwest
10 Territories.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, do you
12 mean the Pointed Mountain line?

13 A Yes sir.

14 THE COMMISSIONER:
15 Yes, well that's another
16 story.

17 MR. SCOTT: Q Mr. Bouckhout,
18 you explained at one point, I think it was you in
19 any event, that in your judgment your proposed south of
20 fort Simpson route was preferable to Arctic Gas's
21 because of something to do with the Ebbutt Hills.
22 What was that all about?

23 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: I don't
24 believe, sir, that it was me who explained that
25 particular point.

26 Q Well, I think somebody
27 on the panel indicated that one of the virtues of the
28 -- of your route adjacent to the Ebbutt Hills was that
29 it didn't go through the Ebbutt Hills.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, that
31 was a proposed International Biological Program Preserve

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 as I understand it, and you sought not to cross the
2 plateau, or you are remaining -- you're lengthening
3 your line by 1 1/2 miles to go around the Ebbutt Hills
4 and thus staying 750 feet below the plateau. I just
5 want you to know I've been listening. That's right,
6 isn't it?

7 Witness Mirosh A. That's correct.

8 MR. SCOTT: Well, do I under-
9 stand that --

10 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: That was
11 in Mr. Mirosh's evidence.

12 MR. SCOTT: Yes, it was, you
13 are quite correct.

14 Q Have the environmentalists
15 any views about that particular route as compared to
16 the Arctic Gas route?

17 A Sir, are you asking
18 myself or Mr. Bouckhout?

19 Q Well, I'm asking either
20 you or Mr. Bouckhout.

21 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT? Well,
22 as regards to our route location and relative to
23 Arctic Gas' location, I don't recall having made a
24 direct comparison of one with the other.

25 Q Well, Mr, Mirosh, what
26 do you say?

27 WITNESS MIROSH: Well, sir I
28 think in assessing our routing we wanted to consider
29 those things which we felt were significant, or that
30 we felt we should stay away from because of concerns

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 of others, and this particular I.B.P. site was
2 brought forward to us by our own people who may have
3 had input from their consultants advising us that it
4 would be prudent for us to stay away from the I.B.P.
5 site, which we subsequently did.

6 Q And when you in your
7 evidence on page 4, in answer to question 5, say:

8 "We were advised by our consultants that a
9 crossing of the Ebbutt Hills Plateau should
10 be avoided as it is generally known that this
11 area is a proposed International Biological
12 Program site,"

13 who did that advice come from? Who were the consult-
14 ants?

15 A Well, I think the
16 advice came to us directly from our environmental
17 department, and as I say, they were probably advised
18 by their consultants, Lombard North.

19 Q Well, Mr. Bouckhout, is
20 that the view of Lombard North, that you should avoid
21 the Ebbutt Hills for that reason?

22 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: Yes, I
23 believe it was.

24 Q Is that in your view a
25 justifiable policy approach to planning a route?

26 A I can't speak to a
27 justifiable policy approach. It was our philosophy it
28 would be a good idea to avoid it, if at all possible.

29 Q Yes. Well now, Mr.
30 Fawcett, in drawing the laterals I take it you had

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 access to the land use maps.

2
3 WITNESS FAWCETT: Yes.

4 Q And indeed you essentially
5 drew the line on the land use maps, didn't you?

6 A I believe the ones that
7 we had available, yes.

8 Q Did you know that in
9 drawing your line to Yellowknife and Pine Point you
10 crossed through three I.B.F. or I.B.P. areas?

11 A I believe that Mr. Bouck-
12 hout is aware of one of them at least, anyway.

13 Q Well, are you going to
14 -- you make a fuss about something that you did at
15 the Ebbutt Hills, and on this lateral at Yellowknife
16 you pass through three I.B.P. areas, one of which
17 is leased to the University of Alberta for a
18 particular project.

19 A I believe that's true.

20 Q Well, are you going to
21 do that?

22 A Yes, I think if we can
23 carry it a little further, if we could, with Mr.
24 Bouckhout, I believe he has looked into that.

25 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: Yes, I
26 believe personally that I am aware of the fact that
27 we cross the Hart Lake I.B.P. site, which as you have
28 indicated --

29 THE COMMISSIONER: What lake?
30 Sorry.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Hart.

Q Hart.

A Which, as you have indicated, is leased to the Department of Zoology, I believe it is, at the University of Alberta. I was not aware of that particular point at the time that Mr. Fawcett was drawing his map, however, subsequent to having found that out I have undertaken to discuss this issue with Dr. Fuller, who is in charge of that particular site, and I believe the reason it was made a site was because it was initially made an investigation field station because it is a representative wetland area, and as a result of that a great deal of information has been generated on that particular area.

I discussed this issue with Dr. Fuller, who is in charge of the Hart Lake Station and has great knowledge of the general Hart Lake region of that particular I.B.P. site, and we came to the mutual conclusion which I wouldn't say is a final conclusion, but which is a mutual conclusion that driving a pipeline across that site would probably be a good idea in that we had a very substantial data base from their initial studies, and would then be able to produce an analysis of what happens after a pipeline is put across.

Q They certainly will, there is no doubt about that. Were you aware of the other two sites that are mapped on the land use maps?

A No, I don't recall having seen those.

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott

1 Q I trust as you'll be
2 doing your work in the future, let me give them to you.
3 There's site No. 22, map sheet 85-F, and site No.
4 49, map sheet 85-F as well, both at Falaise Lake.

5 A I might, sir, say that
6 I have contacted the office of C.C.I.B.P., Panel No.
7 10, and they have provided maps with me and I'm not
8 aware that on the most current maps that we actually
9 do cross these particular sites. They have indicated
10 to me that one or two of the sites in the region
11 have been taken off the list as of recent.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, just,
13 could I -- at page 27, I think it was Mr. Drew said:

14 "Virtually all of our lateral corridors are
15 in new territory, some not even covered by
16 the Geological Survey of Canada open file
17 maps."

18 So that the situation you're in is drawing a line on
19 a map, over-flying the line once you've drawn it, in
20 territory that has never been surveyed by anybody for
21 any purpose. Is that what you meant, Mr. Drew?
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1
2 WITNESS DREW: Open

3 file maps I am speaking of the surficial geology
4 and terrain sensitivity open file maps. Now, there
5 have been some very small scale bedrock geologic
6 mapping done in that area and of course I know
7 nothing about land use or biological maps and so
8 forth. I am speaking of the surficial geology,
9 open file and terrain sensitivity mapping.

10 Q Well, the Geological
11 Survey of Canada is an institution that for fifty
12 years has been conducting geological mapping of this
13 vast country all over the place. If you are going
14 to build a road or a mine or a pipeline or anything
15 else, you always start with the work already done
16 by this institution, isn't that what happens?

17 A That is correct. We
18 did look at the bedrock geologic maps in this area,
19 however there are very few bedrock outcrops except
20 in the stretch from Rae to yellowknife where you
21 are on the shield. In the other part, bedrock maps,
22 this indicates there is quaternary cover or something
23 but that isn't --

24 Q What cover?

25 A Quaternary.

26 Q Do you want to spell
27 that.

28 A Q.U.A.T.E.R.N.A.R.Y.

29 Those are the youngest geological deposits, the
30 surficial deposits and so forth and of course we have
to know not that something is quaternary, but what

1 it is, whether it is alluvial or a lake or just what
2 type of deposit and that information isn't published
3 or available for most of these long laterals to
4 Yellowknife and Pine Point which constitute most
5 of our lateral mileage. Therefore we didn't have
6 as much information to start with and had to depend
7 much more upon our judgment in interpreting the
8 air photos.

9 MR. SCOTT:

Q But Mr. Fawcett,
10 the land use maps are available, and you had them
11 when you drew the lateral to Yellowknife?

12 WITNESS FAWCETT: A I believe
13 that we had all of them. I am not certain whether
14 we did or not.

15 Q Well, if you didn't have
16 all of them, it was because you didn't ask for them.
17 They are all available, aren't they?

18 A Well, I assume that
19 they were available and we referred to them, yes.

20 Q All right. Well,
21 now, Mr. Bouckhout, what is the environmental view
22 going to be about these three I.B.P. sites?

23 WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: A Well,
24 sir, I think the environmental view is going to be
25 again as our philosophy in talking to the I.B.P.
26 people about these sites. As I have already indicated
27 I have talked to them about the Hart Lake Site and
28 we had discussed it in terms of the idea that it
29 probably would be a good idea to cross this. Now,
30 I am sure that in other cases for any other sites

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Cross-Exam by Scott
Re-Exam

1 which we do cross. If it is in fact our view that
2 it would not be a good idea to cross these then we
3 would certainly take measures to look at relocation
4 around these sites.

5 Q I see, none of that
6 has yet been done?

7 A No, it has not, sir.

8 MR. SCOTT: Those are
9 all the questions I have, thank you, members of
10 the panel.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Any
12 re-examination, Mr. Hollingworth.

13 RE-DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. HOLLINGWORTH:

14 Q Just a couple of ques-
15 tions Mr. Commissioner. Mr. Fawcett, in the cross-
16 examination by Mr. Scott, the question of input
17 from socio-economic advisors came up. I just
18 wondered, it seems to be somewhat at odds with the
19 evidence given by Mr. Mirosh, and I just wish
20 you would clarify, was there any socio-economic
21 advice given at all on the routing of the Foothills
22 line?

23 MR. SCOTT: Surely that
24 question has been answered.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
26 'I think that we'll allow it to be answered again
27 then. Carry on.

28 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Thank
29 you, sir.

30 WITNESS FAWCETT: A In the

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Re-Exam

1 initial routing, if we may, we did concern ourself
2 with trapping areas both in the Travaillant
3 Lake area and again around the Fort Simpson area.
4 Initially we also looked at the compressor station
5 locations of which we moved out of the Fort Good Hope
6 area by six miles. We did have certain input that
7 way, but in conjunction with this, we did have
8 numerous meetings between the groups, of course we
9 did have the socio-economic personnel with us and
10 it resulted in the final location of the line as
11 shown in our application.

12 Q And Mr. Mirosh, in
13 the -- particularly in the cross-examination by Mr.
14 Scott, there seems to have been a lot of emphasis
15 placed on terrain typing, and then some discussion
16 of the geotechnical aspects. I wonder, if for
17 clarification, you might just give us some idea
18 of the relative importance of the terrain typing
19 as opposed to the subsequent geotechnical work.

20 WITNESS MIROSH: A Yes, sir.
21 The terrain typing which we engaged the Sproule
22 Company in was to allow us to prepare preliminary
23 routing by using the sensitivity analysis that
24 Mr. Drew has come up with. Subsequently of course
25 Mr. Drew has been in the field and has been refining
26 his terrain typing and we look at that refinement
27 primarily to refine the corridor so that in the
28 event that we have revisions that we wish to
29 consider, lateral movements, we would then have
30 a refined terrain typing analysis so we could again

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout
Gillespie, Drew
Re-Exam

1 look at a preliminary move if we had to do so.
2 But in all cases we look upon terrain typing as a
3 preliminary stage to be followed subsequently by
4 site specific geotechnical information which
5 includes both on site visual inspection and
6 drilling. So for the design of the pipeline
7 I would like to emphasize that it is the geotechnical
8 input that we feel is important, whereas the
9 terrain typing does help us define the preliminary
10 corridors and routes.
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Mirosh, Fawcett, Bouckhout,
Gillespie, Drew
Re-Exam

1 Q One last question. Mr.
2 Fawcett, I believe that you indicated to me that you
3 were somewhat in error on your experience in South-
4 western Ontario as to who you had been working for.

5 WITNESS FAWCETT: Yes, I
6 think when that did come up I mentioned that it
7 was Dome, and it should have been Union Gas.

8 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Thank you,
9 those are all the questions I have.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, thank
11 you very much, Mr. Drew, Mr. Fawcett, Mr. Mirosh,
12 Mr. Bouckhout, and Mr. Gillespie. We appreciate very
13 much your coming here to discuss these questions with
14 us the last two days, and in sharing your knowledge
15 and experience with us, and I know you will understand
16 that it is Mr. Scott's job to ask the toughest questions
17 he can think of, and that's the way we proceed in this
18 Inquiry, and it's certainly no reflection on the regard
19 in which we hold all of the witnesses who take the
20 trouble to participate in the Inquiry. So this
21 panel will be excused then, and I have no doubt we'll
22 see you all again in September, at least most of you.

23 (WITNESSES ASIDE)

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Now, the
25 formal hearings will be adjourned until Monday, September
26 15th, at one o'clock, when we will continue the presen-
27 tation of the Foothills' evidence.

28 I want to make it clear, Mr.
29 Hollingworth, that I expect that we will be working
30 very hard throughout the week of September 15th and the

1 week of September 22nd to complete Phase 1, and to
2 consider the evidence of all of Foothills' panels
3 but I expect that they will be presented in the way
4 that this one has, that is with regard to the
5 differences between the Arctic Gas proposal and the
6 Foothills proposal, and I am grateful to Mr. Gibbs
7 and you, and to the panel, for having sought to
8 highlight the differences in this evidence yesterday
9 and today and not taking us back to Grade 1 and going
10 through it all once again. Not that I didn't appre-
11 ciate and enjoy the evidence of the Arctic Gas panels,
12 but I'm making the point that we don't have to go
13 through it all over again, and I'm interested in the
14 differences so that when we return on the 15th, I
15 want your panels to be ready so that we can work
16 very hard throughout that week and the week of the
17 22nd and so that we can consider the differences as
18 highlighted by the panels that you will be calling.

19 I am going to try very hard
20 to complete Phase 1 in those two weeks because it's
21 important that we should do so.

22 Now I'm going to ask Mr.
23 Scott to consider with counsel a program that would
24 involve the combining of Phases 2 and 3. It seems to
25 me on reflection that it may well be that by combining
26 those two phases it would be possible to avoid the
27 duplication of evidence that we are likely to hear
28 in Phase 2 in Phase 3 when we come to Phase 3, and
29 since Phase 2 is a phase that I think we all expect
30 will not take more than two or perhaps three weeks,

1 it may well be -- and I ask Mr. Scott and counsel to
2 consider this so they will have an opportunity to
3 confer when we reassemble on the 15th -- to consider
4 the combining of those two phases.

5 But let me reiterate, Mr.
6 Hollingworth, that we know that Mr. Gibbs and you
7 have worked in very difficult circumstances to
8 assemble the panels this week, and I didn't help you
9 by choosing to give one of the panels, but we are
10 going to have to ask you and the members of your
11 panels to work very hard between now and the 15th
12 -- that is three weeks -- so that we will have the
13 panels ready to go and each ready to follow the other,
14 even if that means that they have to sit here for a
15 day or two before they are called upon. We are losing
16 a week this coming week, and while no one really can
17 object to having an extra week at the end of the summer,
18 an extra week when one doesn't have to come here and
19 listen to these panels, useful and worthwhile though
20 that is, I really want to make up the time if we can.

21 Consistent, though, and I
22 hope I don't ever have to reiterate this again, con-
23 sistent with ensuring the right of Foothills to a
24 fair hearing. But when we go to the communities we
25 only have so much time, and that means that some
26 of those people have to present their evidence at
27 two o'clock in the morning, and if we can require
28 ordinary people living in the communities to do that,
29 we can require it of eminent profession people such as
30

1 the members of the panels.

2 So we will adjourn the formal
3 hearings until Monday, September 15th at one o'clock,
4 and the Inquiry itself is adjourned until tomorrow when
5 we will convene at Trout Lake, that is tomorrow the
6 23rd; we will convene again at Nahanni Butte on the
7 24th; we will convene at Fort Simpson on September
8 8th and during that same week we will be convening
9 hearings at Wrigley and at Jean Marie River as well,
10 returning here on September 15th at 1 P.M. So we
11 stand adjourned.

12 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO SEPTEMBER 15, 1975)
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

347 Canada. National
M835 Energy Board.
Vol. 60

AUTHOR

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry

Vol. 60 22 August 1975

DATE DUE

SEP 11 1975

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

Government
Publications

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF APPLICATIONS BY EACH OF

- (a) CANADIAN ARCTIC GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES; and
 - (b) FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD. FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES,
- FOR THE PURPOSE OF A PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION, OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE PROPOSED PIPELINES

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

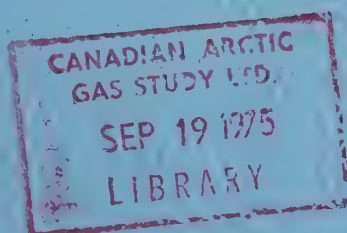
Yellowknife, N.W.T.

September 15th, 1975

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

Volume 61

347
M835
Vol. 61



APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C. Mr. Stephen T. Goudge, Mr. Alick Ryder and Mr. Ian Roland	for Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry;
Mr. D. M. Goldie, Q.C. Mr. Jack Marshall, Mr. Darryl Carter, and Mr. John Steeves	for Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline Limited;
Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C. Mr. Alan Hollingworth	for Foothills Pipelines Ltd.;
Mr. Russell Anthony, Prof. Alastair Lucas	for Canadian Arctic Resources Committee;
Mr. Glen W. Bell and Mr. Gerry Sutton	for Northwest Territories Indian Brotherhood and Metis Association of the Northwest Territories;
Ms. Leslie Lane	for Inuit Tapirisat of Canada and the Committee for Original Peoples' Entitlement;
Mr. Ron Veale and Mr. Allen Lueck	for the council for the Yukon Indians
Mr. Carson H. Templeton	for Environment Protect- ion Board;
Mr. David Reesor	for Northwest Territories Association of Muni- cipalities
Mr. Murray Sigler	for Northwest Territories Chamber of Commerce

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.
SEP 19 1975
LIBRARY

INDEX OF WITNESSES

WITNESSES FOR UNITED STEELWORKERS OF AMERICA

H.L. STEVENS

R. GARLICK

D. WILSON

S. COOK

K. WALLDIE

F. NENDSA

E. MCRAIF

- In Chief

8600

WITNESSES FOR FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD.

E.A. MIROSH

R.M. LAZERTE

D. HENSCH

- In Chief

8625

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Marshall

8651

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Bayly

8691

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Scott

8693

INDEX OF EXHIBITS

1	221	Slide re Alberta Gas Trunk Line System	8615
2	225	Information Re Capital Costs	8615
3	226	Detail on Cost of Gas to Northern Communities	8615
4	227	Charts Re River Crossings	8615
5	228	Travaillant Lake and Thunder River, Denning Areas	8616
6	229	Memo re Selection of Corridor	8616
7	230	Maps re Original Corridor and Actual Route within Corridor	8616
8	231	Klohn Leonoff Reports	8617
9	232	List of Environmental Reports and Studies Relied upon by Environmental Consultants	8617
10	233	Detail of Route Adjustments Recommended by Lombard North	8618
11	234	Slide Marked Volume Build-Up	8639
12	235	Compressor Station Schedule	8640
13	236	Year One Requirement, Gas Turbine Compressor Units	8641
14	237	First Year Cost of Service vs Flat Rate Comparison 48" and 36" @ 24000 H.P.	8647
15	238	First Year Cost of Service vs Flat Rate 42" @ 24,000 H.P., different pressures	8648
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			
25			
26			
27			
28			
29			
30			

Yellowknife, Y.T.

September 15, 1975

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
welcome back to Yellowknife.

The first order of business this afternoon, before we continue with the Foothills' evidence, is a submission from the United Steelworkers of America. As you know, sir, the Yellowknife community hearings will be held in October, beginning in October, at a date yet to be fixed, the United Steelworkers of America are the bargaining agent for a substantial number of residents of the Territory, particularly in the Yellowknife area, and as a matter of convenience it was arranged for them to make their submission today, rather than later on, at the community hearing.

I would ask their representatives to come forward and sit at the table, and perhaps if Miss Hutchinson will take the oath of the principal spokesman, he can then introduce the representatives and they can make their submission.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner, I wonder if I might raise a point. Do I understand from Mr. Scott's remarks that we are finding ourselves today in the first session of the Yellowknife community hearings?

MR. SCOTT: I think it's fair to say that. What occurred, Mr. Commissioner, in this

1 particular instance, was as you know and as all the
2 other participants know, the Yellowknife community
3 hearings will be held beginning in our session in
4 October, but during the evenings. As a result of an
5 arrangement made with Mr. Waddell, it was thought more
6 convenient for the Steelworkers, the bargaining agent
7 of employees of Giant Mines and perhaps other places,
8 to make their submission today, rather than at that
9 time. Therefore, in that sense, we are having a short
10 submission that would normally be heard at the Community
11 hearing for Yellowknife.

12 MR. MARSHALL: Well sir, I
13 appreciate that Mr. Waddell's got a busy schedule and
14 it's difficult for him to keep us advised of everything,
15 but I was advised about 15 minutes before coming into
16 the hearing room that there would be a submission made,
17 and I was handed a copy of a prepared brief.

18 ,Your rulings, sir, do set out
19 certain procedural requirements to be followed at the
20 formal hearings, albeit there are distinctions drawn
21 between those who are major participants and those who
22 are not considered as major participants, and so we
23 have kind of ground rules laid down for the formal
24 hearings. They are somewhat different from those for
25 the community hearings, and particularly they relate
26 to matters such as cross-examination and so on. I
27 just wanted to have that clarified, if I could, and I'm
28 afraid I still don't have it clarified as a result of
29 Mr. Scott's remarks. Where do I find myself this
30 morning, or this afternoon? AM I in a community

1 hearing or am I in a formal hearing, and if I'm in a
2 formal hearing, am I expected to proceed with the cross-
3 examination of this panel on such short notice?

4 MR. SCOTT: First of all, MR.
5 Marshall, you're in Yellowknife. It's the time at which
6 we anticipated that the formal session, to hear the
7 continuation of Foothills' evidence would continue.
8 We are taking a short break from the unrelieved excite-
9 ment of those submissions to hear a community witness,
10 which essentially is the situation in which the Steel-
11 workers are today cast.

12 I would presume that the
13 rules that attach to community hearing witnesses will
14 apply here, though as I have indicated to you on other
15 occasions, and I emphasize with respect to this sub-
16 mission, if you wish on a later occasion to ask any
17 questions, I'll be happy to facilitate that for you.

18 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you very
19 much, Mr. Scott.

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Well I
21 laid down rulings about supplying briefs in advance,
22 but they don't apply to the United Steelworkers. The
23 rulings only apply to the main participants in this
24 Inquiry. That much at least is clear.

25 I should tell you that Mr.
26 Waddell spoke to me some weeks ago and he said the
27 Steelworkers wanted to present a brief, and they
28 wanted to do it today, at least I'm sure he must have
29 said today, and I said that's all right with me, and
30 that's really what happened. There's another group,

1 I think Mr. Waddell can tell you, that another group,
2 another local group wanted to present their brief
3 during the formal hearings, that is in the daytime,
4 instead of in the evening, and I said all right to that,
5 and I can't even remember who they were, Mental Health
6 or something. I think we had better just carry on.
7 I would like a copy of this brief.

8 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
9 while I'm delighted to welcome the Steelworkers, might
10 I suggest that from now on it will be a convenience to
11 all the participants if community hearing witnesses
12 are heard, where possible, at the community hearings,
13 and if it is not possible, we will have to, in concert,
14 make some particular arrangement to hear them, because
15 apart altogether from time table, the role in which
16 they appear may be misunderstood, but I'll try to make
17 arrangements so that that is conveniently done in the
18 future.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: Take it up
20 with Mr. Waddell. He will consider your representation.
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1
2 MR. SCOTT: Well that's what
3 rather troubles me.

4 After that interchange, perhaps
5 we should now hear the submission from The United
6 Steelworkers of America.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: Please,
8 be seated if you wish, don't feel obliged to stand up.
9 It's only the lawyers who have to stand and even they
10 don't always stand.

11 MR. STEVENS: Mr. Commissioner,
12 let me first of all apologize on our behalf. It was
13 our understanding from several meetings we've had in this
14 area with our people, dealing with this question before
15 us today, that we understood the community rules would
16 apply and therefore we have not documented any of our
17 evidence.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: They do
19 apply so don't apologize.

20 MR. STEVENS: They do apply.
21 So we haven't documented any of our evidence.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: They don't
23 apply.

24 MR. STEVENS: They don't apply.
25 At least, you haven't done anything wrong.

26 MR. STEVENS: You mean up to
27 the present time. If the lawyers for the opposition
28 want our brief to be documented, we would be prepared
29 to give that evidence at a later period of time, or to
30 supply it to them.

1 Would you like me to proceed
2 now.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Give us your
4 name for the record.

5 MR. STEVENS: My name is H.
6 Len Stevens, The United Steelworkers Area Representative
7 for the Prairie Provinces and Northwest Territories.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: Could you
9 give us the names of your colleagues?

10 MR. STEVENS: Yes, I will.
11 Mr. Bob Garlick, President of the Northwest Territories
12 Steelworkers Area Council, from Pine Point, on the right
13 hand side.

14 Mr. Don Wilson, the President of
15 Local 803, United Steelworkers of America.

16 Mr. Stewart Cook, Assistant to
17 the Director of Unites Steelworkers for District
18 Number 6, on my right hand side.

19 We have Ken Walldie, the
20 Research Department, for the National Office, United
21 Steelworkers. His home town is Toronto Ontario.

22 Forst Nendsa, Vice President
23 Local 802, which is the Con Mine.

24 Ed McRaie who is our new
25 staff representative, now making his residence here in
26 the City of Yellowknife. That's our people appearing
27 today.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: District
29 6 is Western Canada?

30 MR. STEVENS: District 6 comprise

1 everything from the eastern borders of Ontario to the
2 western borders of B.C. encompassing the Northwest
3 Territories and the Yukon.

4 Mr. Commissioner the
5 Steelworkers Union is pleased to have the opportunity of
6 addressing this Commission today. Our members have a
7 special interest in the issues under consideration here.
8 The U.S.W.A. represents most of the employees in the mining
9 industry, which with over 220 million dollars in
10 production last year, was the most important industry
11 to the Northwest Territories. With almost 900 members
12 in the Northwest Territories, our union is one of the
13 most active labour organizations in the North. Most
14 of these workers and their families are permanent
15 residents of the Yellowknife and Pine Point areas, and
16 they have an obvious long-term interest in the rate and
17 type of development which occurs here.

18 Furthermore, our 185,000 members
19 in the rest of Canada are employed in a wide variety of
20 industries, most of which would be profoundly affected
21 by any project of the scale which has been proposed.
22 In particular, we represent 46,000 workers in the primary
23 metal industry, another 50,00 in the metal fabricating
24 and machinery.

25 For these reasons we felt it
26 was essential that we take the opportunity of presenting
27 to this Commission our views on this proposed development.

28 Along with many other groups
29 which have presented their views to this Commission,
30 our union is alarmed at the prospect of having the largest

1 development project in this country's history undertaken
2 by private interests on a take it or leave it basis,
3 without reference to Canada's long term needs. This
4 should not be taken to mean we are opposed to the ultimate
5 development, exploitation of natural gas resources in
6 the Mackenzie Delta. Rather, we believe that such
7 development when it does take place, should be part of
8 a comprehensive national energy policy designed to develop
9 this and all other energy resources in the best interest of
10 the Canadian people.

11 If we were dealing with a
12 project of conventional proportions, in a competitive
13 market, the prospect of having development undertaken
14 by private interests solely for the purpose of private
15 gain might give rise to less concern. If not clearly
16 in the public interest, at least its harmful potential,
17 if any, would not be seen as a risk of catastrophic and
18 irreversible damage.

19 What we are dealing with here
20 is not a project of conventional proportions undertaken
21 in a competitive market. And although some benefits can
22 be measured, there are staggering social costs involved
23 which are completely excluded from the decision making
24 process of the promoters.

25 The question of when and how to
26 exploit these resources involves a complicated set of
27 trade-offs. It is inconceivable to us that this single
28 option proposed by one consortium, should even be
29 considered on an all or nothing basis without a thorough
30 evaluation of all the options, and all the possible

1 benefits and costs both economic and social.

2 The proposed Mackenzie Valley
3 Pipeline, as we have said, is no ordinary development
4 proposal. Any project of such gigantic magnitude, built
5 over such a short period of time is bound to involve
6 some special problems which require an unusual degree of
7 public participation in the decision making process.
8 We would like to comment briefly on the nature of these
9 special problems.

10 1. The proposed development
11 would be of such huge proportions, and carried out in such
12 a short period of time, that there would be unavoidable
13 disruptions in these industries which will be called upon
14 to produce the steel, the pipe, the machinery and other
15 materials necessary. The industrial structure would be
16 distorted as these industries attempted to meet the short-
17 term demand and in the process, other socially necessary
18 projects would be compromised. In addition, since the
19 Canadian steel industry is not capable of producing the
20 required volume of large diameter pipe in the short period
21 of time involved, Canadian content in this project would
22 be much smaller than would be the case with some alter-
23 native projects.

24 Employment generated in the
25 construction phase of the development would be short
26 term, would primarily involve specialized labour dis-
27 placed from other projects in the South. The boom
28 created in the construction industry would be matched by
29 a slump when the project was completed.

30 We believe that a smaller

1 scale pipeline, built over a longer period of time
2 would reduce the structural disruption in Canadian
3 industry and increase Canadian content.

4 2. Serious economic problems
5 on a national scale will result from the construction of
6 such a large project, financed primarily with funds from
7 foreign sources. Some economists believe that the
8 capital inflows will be large enough to increase the
9 exchange rate dramatically. There is no doubt that the
10 excessive demand for industrial goods will increase the
11 rate of inflation. The project will also involve an
12 extension of foreign control in the Canadian economy.
13 Furthermore, it is likely that increased export of Canadian
14 natural gas would be involved, at a time when Canada's
15 long term energy needs have not been clearly established.

16 We believe that a pipeline built
17 to serve Canadian markets and financed primarily with
18 funds under Canadian control would be more appropriate
19 for the Canadian economy and more in keeping with Canada's
20 long-term energy needs.

21 3. The environmental impact
22 of the proposed development has been studied, but the
23 result is still unclear. Obviously there would be sub-
24 stantial environmental damage, however, and this would
25 represent a heavy social cost to be born by the
26 residents of the Territories and the native people
27 especially. Furthermore, the damage will occur in
28 areas which are claimed by the native people, and these
29 claims have not yet been settled. Representatives of
30 the native people's associations have already testified

1 before this Commission that the construction of a pipe-
2 line during the negotiation of these claims would
3 prejudice their case.

4 Whether or not a pipeline is
5 compatible with the land-based economy of the Mackenzie
6 Valley inhabitants can only be decided by the natives
7 themselves, once their rights to the land have been
8 established.

9 To make any decision about a
10 pipeline while these land claims are still undecided,
11 would be grossly unjust.

12 We believe that no pipeline
13 rights should be granted until the environmental impact
14 has been thoroughly assessed and the means of mitigating
15 that impact have been decided upon; and until native land
16 claims have been equitably settled.

17 We will not attempt to
18 second guess the experts by providing answers to all
19 these questions. We raise³ them now, not because we have
20 ready solutions, but because we believe that they
21 represent social costs which do not even enter into the
22 calculations of the private interests who are proposing
23 to build this pipeline, must less receive the consider-
24 ation that the public interest requires.

25 Our union, involved as it is with
26 natural resource extraction all over Canada, is familiar
27 with this basic conflict of interest. The fundamental
28 problem is that the benefits of this type of development,
29 accrue to corporations in the form of higher than normal
30 profit levels, while many of the costs accrue to other

1 groups in society. The reason for this is that social
2 costs are not "priced" by the market and hence do not
3 enter into the cost-benefit calculations of those who
4 are interested in purely private benefits and costs.

5 The Canadian public interests
6 as well as the interests of the people of the Northwest
7 Territories, cannot properly be met by the granting of
8 any pipeline rights at this time. The public interest
9 demands that a comprehensive evaluation be performed
10 with reference to all the possible options and with
11 reference to all the economic and social costs and
12 benefits, whether private or public. A wide range of
13 options, ranging from no development to non pipeline
14 alternatives, such as a railroad, need to be considered.

1 "The railway alternative in
2 particular appears to have been dismissed out of hand
3 because of its alleged inefficiency for transporting
4 natural gas and also because of the environmental damage
5 which it might cause. But we do not believe this option
6 has been adequately studied from the standpoint of over-
7 all long term economic development in the north. The
8 fact that no one at this point is proposing to build
9 anything other than a pipeline does not lessen the need
10 for a comprehensive study of all of the options.

11 "This can only be done with
12 reference to a national energy policy. The use of
13 Mackenzie Valley Gas in particular, or even fossil fuels
14 in general cannot be analysed in isolation. Energy
15 development must be an integrated process, encompassing
16 the study of sources, transportation, the uses of all
17 forms of energy. It cannot be taken for granted that
18 the exploitation of fossil fuels in the Arctic is neces-
19 sary or desirable, simply because one group of companies
20 thinks it can make a profit from a pipeline. Certainly
21 it would be bad economics if over-development of
22 natural gas supplies were to lead to an even greater
23 reliance on this depletable resource, when Canada should
24 be looking to the development of alternative sources of
25 energy and allocating capital accordingly. Furthermore,
26 the social implications are so immense that it is
27 clear that a project of this magnitude can only be
28 properly undertaken under public control.

29 The Canadian public must not
30 be allowed to be blackmailed by the threat of an

1 alleged "energy crisis" into believing that the pipeline
2 as proposed is an all-or-nothing proposition. The
3 question is not whether MacKenzie Delta natural gas
4 should be utilized or not, but rather at what time and
5 in what form such development should take place, and
6 under whose control the completed utility should be.

7 "We are aware that some of the
8 problems we have raised do not fall within the terms
9 of reference of this Commission. Nevertheless, we
10 believe that the Commission, if it finds that essential
11 national policies have not been formulated in areas
12 which are crucial to this inquiry, should make it
13 clear that any decisions made at this time are premature.

14 All of which is respectfully
15 submitted, on behalf of the United Steelworkers of
16 America and the Locals in this area.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you
18 very much, sir.

19 You said that you were pre-
20 pared to document this brief, by that I take it, to
21 supply some of the facts and figures that the union and
22 its staff worked up in preparing this, is that what
23 you meant?

24 WITNESS STEVENS: Yes, Mr.
25 Commissioner. It's too bad we didn't know the way this
26 was going to proceed, but we do know the volume of
27 production that our steel mills and our pipe mills can
28 produce in Canada, and we also are aware of the volumes
29 which the steel mills and pipe mills can produce in
30 the United States of America. From this knowledge of

1 our own units, we are prepared to document the evidence
2 at the mills and the pipe mills and rolling mills in
3 Canada and the United States, will not be in a position
4 to supply the necessary pipe that is needed for this
5 kind of a pipe mill at this time.

6 Mr. Walldie, who is from our
7 National REsearch Department, has put a considerable
8 amount of work on it. As I say, I'm sorry, we did not
9 bring other evidence down today.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, we
11 may at some stage ask that Mr. Walldie return if -- we
12 will leave that with Mr. Scott who is commission
13 counsel to consider, but we might ask Mr. Walldie to
14 come back at some later time. You are Mr. Walldie,
15 aren't you? Well we might ask you to come back at some
16 later time and -- to bring some of the material with
17 you that was spoken about.

18 Would anyone else on the panel
19 care to add anything? Mr. Cook?

20 MR. COOK: Maybe you
21 would care to hear from some of the local residents at
22 this time?

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Certainly.
24 If any of you who are on the panel would like to add
25 anything, feel free.

26 WITNESS STEVENS: Bob Garlick,
27 who is the president of the Steelworkers' Northwest
28 Territories Area Council from way of Pine Point.

29 MR. GARLICK: I have nothing
30 more to add, other than to reiterate the outline in

ALLWEST REPORTING LTD.
BURNABY 2, B.C.

R. GARLICK
S. COOK

1 regards to the social implications and the need for the
2 study of the environmental ramifications. We also feel
3 that it's not really necessary at this time to exploit
4 this gas without further consideration to our nation's
5 needs, and long-term needs. That's particularly about
6 all that I have to say at this moment.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you,
8 Mr. Garlick.

9 MR. GARLICK: Other than again
10 to reiterate that the native land claims must be settled
11 before anything in this line can proceed.

12 MR. COOK: I think, Mr.
13 Chairman -- my name is Cook. I might
14 say to you that those of us who have been engaged in
15 representing Steelworkers, the steel industry as we have
16 for a good many years, are worried that we would have
17 -- if the industry was able to create a demand, and
18 thereby a development of the industry in a direction
19 meeting the demands of this project in the period of
20 time that is outlined, we would have a very imbalanced
21 steel industry, in our view, develop as a result of
22 that.

23 Certainly, the capacity of the
24 pipe mills in Canada and the capacity of the plate mills
25 to build the material --

26 THE COMMISSIONER: What mills?

27 MR. COOK: Plate mills.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Plate mills.

29 MR. COOK: -- aren't sufficient
30 to develop anything like the quantities of large steel

1 pipe that are required here, very small proportions in
2 the Canadian mills, and to suggest that --

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Sorry, in
4 very small proportions -- you might pull the microphone
5 a little closer to you.

6 MR. COOK: A very small pro-
7 portion in the Canadian mills could be produced, the
8 capacity of those mills in large size pipe is very
9 limited, and projects like the Lake Erie development,
10 which will bring on stream larger amounts of plate
11 steel --

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Now the
13 Lake Erie development, is that the new plant at Welland?

14 MR. COOK: No, that's the
15 Steel Company of Canada's plate mill development on
16 Lake Erie --

17 THE COMMISSIONER: I see.

18 MR. COOK: -- which is not
19 going to come on stream for a couple of years, and
20 which will be a major supplier of the material to the
21 Welland mill. She's not there as yet for the product-
22 ion of steel, and in the time frame that we have heard
23 discussed with respect of this project, would only be
24 there for the finishing parts of the project, rather
25 than for a major supply of it. In any event, even when
26 that's on stream, it would still be a very small part
27 of the total amount of large size pipe that could be
28 made in this country.

29 The miles and miles of pipe
30 that we are talking about here would tax the whole

1 world's capacities in large size pipe, which is not an
2 easy thing to overcome. Now, there are demands on the
3 world supply of large size pipe in addition to this
4 project, so that it's very questionable, in our view,
5 and certainly I think the -- any applicant for licences
6 to proceed with this kind of project should be able to
7 establish that this is available without totally dis-
8 torting the steel industry, because we do have other
9 needs, and we do need to have a development of that
10 industry, in our view, that meets the general growth
11 needs of Canada, and not be distorted totally in one
12 direction, and to upset the basic steel economy in the
13 country, and further than Canada's boundaries obviously,
14 because you would be dealing with capacity from large
15 areas of the world in order to touch this size of
16 production in the time frame that has been suggested.

1 Smaller dimension pipe, of
2 course the capacity is larger. A longer time frame, of
3 course, the needs can be met with less stress. I would
4 think that it would be incumbent upon those making a
5 project submission to really demonstrate the ability of
6 the market to produce without distorting it all. I
7 think that would be the added comment that I would like
8 to make at this time.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you
10 Mr. Cook. Anything you'd like to add?

11 MR. STEVENS: That seems to
12 be our submission, Mr. Commissioner.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, thank
14 you very much. It may interest you that last week we
15 held a community hearing in Fort Simpson and the
16 Chamber of Commerce there made very forcefully one of
17 the points you have made. That is, they urged the
18 construction period be stretched out. so that the impact
19 on the Northern economy would be less in each year than
20 it would be if it were constructed with the present
21 schedule proposed.

22 All of these points are very
23 interesting and we will take them into account, we have
24 already looked at some of them, but we will be looking
25 at some of them in greater detail and when we do, we
26 may well ask Mr. Walldie to come back, but you will
27 be given plenty of notice of that. If you are brought
28 back, Mr. Walldie, the lawyers for Arctic Gas at least,
29 will probably want to ask you some questions, and you'll
30 have to be ready for that.

1 MR. STEVENS: That will be
2 their day in court, will it?

3 THE COMMISSIONER: I don't
4 know whether the lawyers from Foothills will want to
5 ask you anything, but we shall see.

6 MR. COOK: I think that's
7 one thing we might request, Mr. Chairman, and that is,
8 a schedule of your hearings when you're coming down
9 East. It may be that our national office would like to
10 make a further submission, or our district office at
11 that time.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: You'll be
13 hearing from Mr. Waddell, you'll get plenty of notice
14 of that.

15 So thank you very much, and
16 we do appreciate your coming and if you wish to remain,
17 you are certainly welcome to stay and to listen to what
18 is going on here. We will be adjourning in an hour or
19 so for coffee and if you're still here then you're welcome
20 to join us for coffee.

21 MR. STEVENS: Thank you very much.

22 (WITNESS ASIDE)

23 MR. GIBBS: Before I call my
24 next panel sir, I have some material to file, that we
25 undertook to provide during the last time we were in
26 Yellowknife.

27 The first are copies of a slide
28 which was referred to by Mr. Blair, showing the spare
29 capacity which will exist in the Alberta Gas Trunk Line
30 System, Exhibit Number 221 was reserved for that

1 photograph and we're ready to file it now.

2 (SLIDE SHOWING SPARE CAPACITY OF ALBERTA GAS TRUNK LINE
3 SYSTEM MARKED EXHIBIT 221)

4 MR. GIBBS: Then sir, a trans-
5 cript reference, pages 8279 to 8283, Mr. Scott asked Mr.
6 Blair for some detail on the capital costs and the
7 proportions of public financing, for the Foothills
8 project and we are ready to file that detail now,
9 What would be the next exhibit number please.

10 That becomes Exhibit 225
11 sir.

12 (INFORMATION RE CAPITAL COSTS MARKED EXHIBIT 225)

13 MR. GIBBS: A transcript
14 reference, pages 8290 to 8292, there was a request
15 about detail on the cost of gas to Northern communities,
16 I believe by Mr. Scott.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.

18 MR. GIBBS: We're ready to file
19 that sir as Exhibit Number 226.

20 (DETAIL ON COSTS OF GAS TO NORTHERN COMMUNITIES MARKED
21 EXHIBIT 226)

22 MR. GIBBS: Then sir, at page
23 8388 the witness Gillespie was describing from some
24 charts he had, river crossings. I undertook to have
25 those photographed in smaller sizes and marked as an
26 exhibit. I have them, I don't have extra copies, but
27 I think there are two here and if anyone who wants to
28 see them could see them through Miss Hutchinson.

29 That's Exhibit 227.

30 (CHARTS OF RIVER CROSSINGS MARKED EXHIBIT 227)

1 MR. GIBBS: Then sir, at
2 transcript page 8395, Mr. Marshall asked the witness
3 about Travailant Lake, and the Thunder River Denning
4 areas and we have -- he wanted the references used
5 there and we have that material to be filed sir, as
6 Exhibit 228.

7 (TRAVAILLANT LAKE, THUNDER RIVER DENNING AREAS MARKED
8 AS EXHIBIT 228)

9 MR. GIBBS: At page 8492,
10 Mr. Scott asked the witness Fawcett about the selection
11 of the corridor and the composite maps that were made
12 up. We have, in response to that request, a memorandum
13 sir, and some maps to demonstrate what was done in that
14 connection. This will be Exhibit 229.

15 (MEMORANDUM AND MAPS MARKED EXHIBIT 229)

16 THE GIBBS: The maps sir
17 which are quite large, perhaps might be left in this
18 container and marked as Exhibit 230, I'm sure my
19 friend's advisors will want to examine them.

20 (MAPS MARKED EXHIBIT 230)

21 MR. Marshall Excuse me, Mr.
22 Gibbs, what did the large maps pertain to? Were they
23 part of the material Mr. Fawcett was producing?

24 MR. GIBBS: Yes.

25 MR. Marshall I see.

26 MR. GIBBS: They show the
27 original corridor and then on blueprint maps show the
28 actual route within the corridor that was originally
29 examined.

30 Then sir, at page 8501, a
request was made for the Klohn Leonoff Reports on route

1 adjustment, and we're ready to mark those reports as
2 Exhibit 231, as well as the original report this
3 exhibit contains weekly reports as further examinations
4 were done.

5 (REPORTS ON ROUTE ADJUSTMENT MARKED EXHIBIT 231)

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you.

7 MR. GIBBS: Then sir, the next
8 request we filled occurs at page 8514, and that was a
9 request for a list of the environmental reports and
10 studies relied upon by the Environmental consultants and
11 that we could mark now sir as Exhibit 232.

12 (ENVIRONMENTAL REPORTS AND STUDIES MARKED EXHIBIT 232)

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 I should point out, in connect-
2 ion with Exhibit 232, sir, that by no means all of those
3 reports are within the Foothills' Pipelines possession.
4 Some of them are in the library of their consultants.

5 Then, sir at pages 8510 to
6 8523 inclusive, requests were made to have detail of
7 route adjustments recommended by Lombard North, which
8 is a consultant to Foothills' Pipeline Limited, and we
9 are ready to mark that now, sir, as Exhibit 233. This
10 exhibit shows on the first page, route changes
11 recommended and adopted and on subsequent pages, route
12 changes which have been recommended by Lombard North
13 but have not yet received final decision by Foothills.

14
15 (ROUTE ADJUSTMENTS RECOMMENDED BY LOMBARD NORTH
16 MARKED AS EXHIBIT 233)
17

18 MR. GIBBS: Again, sir, before
19 going on with the evidence, there are two other points
20 I would like to raise with you, and those both arise
21 from the cross-examination of the panel on location by
22 Mr. Scott; during the course of which he asked certain
23 questions which left inferences which I'm sure he would
24 not like to be left because they were wrong, and the
25 inferences arose in part from the wording of his ques-
26 tions. We want to make sure that those inferences are
27 corrected and I would like to do that at this time, sir.

28 The first place where that
29 occurred was at page 8547, and at that page, sir, Mr.
30 Scott, in cross-examining the location panel said,

1 "Do you know the location of the site of Fort Alexander
2 with relation to this line?" "A No, sir, I don't."
3 Have you ever heard anything about how the line runs
4 now in relation to Fort Alexander?" "No."
5 "Have you ever heard of Fort Alexander?" "Yes."
6 "Do you know where it is?" "No." Then you, sir, con-
7 fess that you haven't heard of it either.

8 Mr. Scott goes on and says,
9

10 "Well it is located as I understand it on the north bank
11 of the Willowlake between the highway and the pipeline",
12 and you sir say, "Between the highway, between the line
13 on the map." Mr. Scott: "Between the line on the map
14 which will be the highway, perhaps, and the pipeline".
15 "THE COMMISSIONER: Perhaps." "MR. SCOTT: Perhaps".

16 "What is the scale of this map,
17 Mr. Gillespie?

18 WITNESS GILLESPIE: This map
19 is approximately one inch equals 2,500 feet.

20 "So I take it at the point
21 where the pipeline crosses the Willowlake it is
22 approximately 2,000 feet from the proposed highway?

23 "A Yes.

24 "Q Yes, and Mr. Bouckhout, did
25 you ever hear that Fort Alexander was precisely at that
26 junction?

27 "WITNESS BOUCKHOUT: I have
28 never heard that, sir, however, our archaeological
29 consultants will certainly be looking into that once we
30 have defined the route in terms, of from the environmental

1 point of view in terms of putting the additional archae-
2 ological information into it.

3 Q "Well, I take it that whatever
4 you may do in the future, there has been no environmental
5 assessment that relates to that juxtaposition of the
6 highway, the line and this particular site, Fort
7 Alexander?

8 "A Our archaeological con-
9 sultants have looked at this line and they have indi-
10 cated I believe to date that there are no immediate
11 changes to be made from an archaeological point of view.

12 "Q They have expressed no
13 concern?

14 "A Not to my knowledge to me
15 specifically, sir.

16 "Q Yes, do you know any-
17 thing about the location of historical grave sites on
18 that particular portion of the route?

19 "A Personally, no, I do
20 not.

21 "Q Have you ever heard any-
22 thing from your archaeologists or anybody else about the
23 impact of the pipeline and the proposed highway on
24 those grave sites?

25 "A Not personally.

26 "Q Have you heard any com-
27 plaints about the location of the line with regard to
28 that?

29 "A Not personally."
30

1 Now sir, that was some concern
2 to us, the thought or the implication that those grave
3 sites had been ignored and so further investigation has
4 been done and I am informed as follows: Inquiries were
5 made by Paul Whitney, Biologist for the Lombard North
6 group as to the location of grave sites in the vicinity
7 of Willowlake River and where were those sites in relat-
8 ion to the proposed Foothills' Pipeline route location.
9 He was told of two grave locations; one located a mile
10 downstream on the Mackenzie River and one west of the
11 proposed Mackenzie Highway. Foothills' line is east of
12 the Mackenzie/^{Highway}by about a quarter mile and would not
13 conflict with this grave location.

14 It has come to our attention
15 that the Department of Public Works had to alter the
16 location of the highway approximately 100 feet east, to
17 avoid a grave site area. As previously mentioned, our
18 location approximately one-quarter mile east of the
19 Mackenzie Highway should avoid this site.

20 Now sir, I take it that that
21 satisfies my friend that we are not in any sufficient
22 proximity to do harm to the grave sites.

23 The second one, sir and --

24 MR. SCOTT: Perhaps I should
25 be allowed to deal with that. Mr. Gibbs wasn't here
26 and perhaps the impact of what we were attempting to
27 elicit isn't clear from the transcript. We didn't assert
28 that -- and I don't know whether it's true, we didn't
29 assert that their proposed route ran over a grave site
30 or ran through the entrance of Fort Alexander. We were

1 simply concerned in assessing the input they had when
2 they selected their route, and we asked therefore, if
3 they were aware of the existence of these phenomena,
4 not to determine whether they rode over them, but simply
5 in terms of making their decision as to whether the
6 route -- as to where the route should go.

7 If my friend is now telling me
8 that they are not going to run over a grave site, I of
9 course accept that.

10 MR. GIBBS: Well I took that
11 the questions sir, in the transcript, meant what it
12 said, when he said that Fort Alexander was precisely
13 at the junction of the pipeline crossing Willowlake I
14 thought that should be corrected.

15 The second one, sir, I view
16 somewhat more seriously and that has to do with the
17 International Biological Program sites. At page 8583,
18 my friend, in cross-examining the same panel starts
19 this series of questions:

20 "Q Did you know that in
21 drawing your line to Yellowknife and Pine Point you
22 crossed through three International Biological Program
23 areas?

24 "A I believe that Mr.
25 Bouckhout is aware of one of them at least.

26 "Q Well, are you going to
27 -- you make a fuss about something that you did at the
28 Ebbutt Hills, and on this lateral at Yellowknife you
29 pass through three International Biological Program
30 areas, one of which is leased to the University of

1 Alberta for a particular project."

2 Now sir, that is incorrect.

3 We have done subsequent investigations on this because
4 again we were concerned, and the instructions I have,
5 which are backed up by correspondence we have here that
6 my friend can examine if he wishes, are as follows:
7 That the location of the proposed Yellowknife-Pine Point
8 service lateral will not establish any conflict with
9 International Biological Program site 22, which is the
10 Deep Bay Wood Bison Sanctuary; 49A which is the Mills
11 Lake Sanctuary; 49B, Horn River. It does fall on site
12 79, Hart Lake and the witness made his explanations
13 about that.

14 Now, sir, I'm sure my friend
15 did not do this intentionally. There are a number of
16 these maps apparently issued periodically, and as I say
17 we do have the correspondence which we engaged in after
18 our last appearance here to make sure that we were not,
19 as he said in his question, crossing three International
20 Biological Program areas.

21 MR. SCOTT: Well, Mr. Comm-
22 issioner, a number of points with respect to that.
23 Land use maps are issued which show these sites, and the
24 purpose of the question was to invite the witness to
25 comment on whether, in drawing the route or the lateral,
26 he had consulted the maps. If he had consulted the maps,
27 he would have seen the Biological sites that were
28 listed. That's point one.

29 Now, I can see that it may be
30 that new maps are issued which amend the location of the

1 biological sites. If the witness was relying on those,
2 he no doubt would have told us. If there are new land
3 use maps which alter the position of those sites, I will
4 make an inquiry to determine whether that's true, and
5 let you know. Certainly, my instructions are that on
6 the latest maps of which we have knowledge, it passes
7 through three sites.

8 Now, my friend says that there
9 is -- he has information that the location of the line
10 is not in conflict with those sites. That's an entirely
11 different question, of course, and we'll just have to
12 deal with that at some other stage of the inquiry. I
13 will, however, attempt to find out whether there are
14 more recent land use maps which make my question less
15 pointed and if there are, I'll bring them to the
16 inquiry's attention. I would be grateful if my friend
17 can produce them, if there are such.

1 MR. GIBBS: Those were the
2 points I wanted to bring up and particularly the one
3 where, in my submission, it is not a question, it is an
4 assertion that we crossed / through three sites and we took
5 issue with that assertion sir.

6 Now, Mr. Commissioner, we are
7 ready to proceed, with our fourth panel of Foothills
8 Evidence. I should explain sir, this is Panel 4, although
9 it is the third to appear. but because Panel 2 was not
10 heard. Could we have then, Mr. Mirosh, Mr. Lazerte and
11 Mr. Hensch to the stand please.

12 E.A. MIROSH: Sworn

13 RONALD M. LAZERTE. Sworn

14 D. HENSCH: Sworn

15 MR. GIBBS: In reproducing this
16 prepared evidence sir, the Mag Card system didn't work
17 entirely accurately, so the beginning and the end, there
18 will be some slight deviations to insert what should
19 have been there in the beginning.

20 DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. GIBBS: ,

21 Q Mr. Mirosh, you are Manager
22 of Engineering for Foothills Pipelines?

23 MR. MIROSH:

24 A Yes.

25 Q In that capacity you
26 appeared before this inquiry previously?

27 A Yes, I appeared as a member
28 of the locations panel on August 20 and 21.

29 Q Mr. Mirosh, can you explain
30 the basic differences in the hydraulics philosophy between

1 Canadian Arctic Gas and Foothills application?

2 A The most significant
3 difference between the two proposals is that Canadian
4 Arctic Gas is planning to bring gas from Alaska to
5 connect with its main line. In doing so, CAGSL
6 have sized their mainline to 48 inches and also their
7 Alaskan and Mackenzie Beaufort connections are sized at
8 48 inches, with alternatives offered to decrease these
9 to 42 inches.

10 In the Foothills hydraulic
11 design, we do not propose to bring gas from Alaska to
12 connect with the mainline. In addition, our main
13 pipeline from the Richards Island Gas Plant to the 60th
14 parallel is sized at 42 inches.

15 The second major difference
16 is the operating pressure level and the resulting wall
17 thickness of the pipe.

18 C.A.G.S.I. is proposing to
19 operate at 1680 P.S.I.G. with a resulting 48 inch
20 diameter pipe wall thickness of .720 inches. In the
21 case of Foothills we are proposing to install and test
22 a 1440 P.S.I.G. system with a pipe wall thickness of
23 .540 inches.

24 Foothills proposes however,
25 to operate this system at 1250 P.S.I.G.

26 A third difference to be noted
27 is that Canadian Arctic Gas proposes to chill the gas
28 to their station M-17 and from this station to Zama
29 Lake, they operate with a freeze / thaw cycle. In
30 contrast, Foothills would cease chilling and ensure that

1 gas temperatures remain above 32 degrees farenheit south
2 of Fort Simpson.

3 The fourth major difference
4 concerns volumes and build up period. In the Foothills
5 case, we propose to begin operations with a volume of
6 800 million cubic feet per day building up to 2.4 billion
7 cubic feet per day, over a period of five years. All of
8 this gas would come from Canadian gas plants in the
9 Mackenzie Beaufort area. Canadian Arctic Gas on the
10 other hand, assumes that 1.25 BCF per day would be
11 available from the Mackenzie Beaufort area for its first
12 year of operation. For its second year of operation,
13 C.A.G.P.L. assumes 2 BCF per day, being made available
14 from Alaska as well. Following the second year of
15 operation, when approximately 3.25 BCF per day in total
16 is being received, the C.A.G.P.L. builds up to the
17 maximum of 4.5 BCF per day, over the remaining three
18 years, resulting in an ultimate receipt volume from
19 Prudhoe Bay and the Mackenzie Beaufort area of 2.25 BCF
20 per day from each area.

21 The fifth difference is that
22 our design assumes the use of primarily 24,000 horsepower
23 gas turbine driven compressors, whereas C.A.G P.L.
24 proposes using 30,000 horsepower units.

25 Q You have mentioned that the
26 Foothills ultimate volume will be 2.4 cubic feet per day,
27 Can you explain that a little further?

28 A When we began our first
29 hydraulic studies for Foothills, we chose to use 2.25
30 billion cubic feet per day, from the Mackenzie Beaufort

1 area since this was the volume used by the study group.
2 Using this volume, we carried out some preliminary hyd-
3 raulics designs for different arrangements of pipe and
4 compression.

5 Subsequently, Mr. Mackie, our
6 Manager of Evaluations and Forecasts, together with his
7 consultants, carried out intensive studies concerning
8 probable reserves additions in the Mackenzie Beaufort
9 area and market projections for Canadian gas needs in
10 Canada. Based on this work, we were advised by Mr.
11 Mackie that in the near term, 2.4 billion cubic feet
12 per day would likely be required by Canadian markets.
13 and in addition, that this volume could comfortably
14 be supplied with the projected reserves additions from
15 the Mackenzie Beaufort Basin.

16 I should point out that the
17 2.4 billion cubic feet per day we refer to, is a receipt
18 volume at the top end of the pipeline which represents
19 95 percent of the pipeline's system capability.

20 Using an average day volume of
21 2.4 billion cubic feet per day, our engineers carried
22 out studies for several different pipeline diameters,
23 operating pressures and compressor unit sizes. The
24 results of these studies which were shown in our appli-
25 cation in graphical form, in Section 3B-1.0 indicate
26 the relationships between volumes and cost of service
27 for the different pipeline configurations.

28 These studies indicated to us
29 that a 42 inch pipeline system, with a .540 wall thickness
30 operating at 1250 pounds per square inch and with 24.000

1 ISO horsepower gas compression units, could carry an
2 average day receipt volume of approximately 2.4 billion
3 cubic feet per day, at a minimum cost of service for that
4 particular configuration if the stations were optimally
5 spaced. The study showed an optimum spacing to be, on
6 the average, around 48 to 50 miles between compressor
7 stations, for a total of seventeen stations.

8 These comparative cost of
9 service calculations were carried out using all pipe
10 and compression costs for both installation and operations
11 and maintenance. However, the costs for support facilities
12 for construction were not included and the effect of
13 adding all costs into the comparative studies would be
14 to shift the optimal volume for all pipeline configurations
15 to slightly higher levels of throughput. For comparative
16 purposes, therefore, it is not necessary to include the
17 costs of common facilities which would be required for
18 any of the pipeline configuration studies.

19 In summary, we have chosen 2.4
20 billion cubic feet per day, since this is the volume
21 which has been determined by both the study of Canadian
22 gas requirements and by projected reserves addition
23 study for the Mackenzie Beaufort Basin. As well, we have
24 determined from our hydraulics work, that 2.4 billion
25 cubic feet per day can be carried by a pipeline system
26 such as the one we propose, at a minimum cost of service
27 for that configuration.

28 Q Will you explain why you have
29 chosen to operate your system at 1250 pounds per square
30 inch gauge rather than 1440?

1 A A metallurgical panel which
2 will shortly appear before this inquiry will deal with
3 the subject of unstable ductile crack propagation.
4 which was the principal reason for reducing the operating
5 pressure from the design pressure. In reducing the oper-
6 ating pressure, as we have done, we have reduced the
7 operating stress levels which the pipe will be subjected
8 to due to internal pressure. By specifying pipe with the
9 highest currently achievable toughness properties and
10 by examining various combinations of pressures and
11 temperatures which this pipe will be subjected to during
12 operation, our metallurgical engineers have determined
13 that a reduction of pipe stress levels consistent with
14 reducing the operating pressure from 1440 PSI to
15 1250 PSI will limit propogating ductile cracks, should
16 they ever occur.

17 For our hydraulics studies,
18 therefore, we have taken the maximum operating pressure
19 to be 1250 pounds per square inch. Our station spacing
20 was based on using this maximum operating pressure. We
21 also ran studies to see what differences would occur
22 in our station spacing had we chosen to use a 1440
23 PSI maximum operating pressure. A comparision of the
24 cost of service results is shown in our application
25 and as may be expected, operation at the higher pressure
26 allows the pipeline system to carry a higher volume at
27 a lower cost of service.

28 Q Will you now explain how
29 the Foothills system connects with other pipeline systems
30 and processing plants?

1 A The Foothills Pipe Line
2 system would receive and meter gas from the downstream
3 side of the gas processing plants at the north end of the
4 pipeline. The pipeline runs for approximately 817 miles
5 to a point located about 6 miles north of the 60th parallel
6 where compressor station 17 would be located and where two
7 meter stations would be installed.

8 One of these metering stations
9 would meter gas into the Westcoast Transmission system
10 over a connecting link through the Northwest Territories
11 and British Columbia, to a point near Fort Nelson. The
12 second metering facility located along side of the
13 first, would meter gas which moves into the AGTL Canada
14 system through the Northwest Territories and Alberta via
15 a connecting link to a point of intersection with the
16 Alberta Gas Trunk Line system near Zama Lake. At
17 station 17, gas discharge temperatures will be limited
18 to 80 degrees/^{fahrenheit} by an aerial cooler and pressures and
19 volumes will be regulated so that both receiving pipeline
20 systems would obtain the agreed upon quantities of gas at
21 pressure levels consistent with their existing operating
22 systems.

23 Q Mr. Lazerte, you are the
24 Supervisor of Station Design at Foothills Pipelines?

25 MR. LAZERTE:

26 A Yes.

27 Q Does the sheet attached
28 to the prepared evidence and having your name at the
29 top accurately describe your academic qualifications and
30 experience?

1 A Yes.

2 Q Would you read the contents
3 in please?

4 A Education, BSC in Chemical
5 Engineering, 1946, University of Alberta.
6 Experience, employed in the oil and gas industry since
7 1947. British American Oil Company Limited, 1947 to
8 1953, plant engineer, Longview Gas Plant. Engineer on
9 construction of the Edmonton Refinery. Operations
10 engineer, Edmonton Refinery. Startup and operations
11 engineer, Moose Jaw Refinery expansion. Texaco Exploration
12 Canada Limited, that's a wholly owned affiliate of
13 Tex Inc. 1953 to 1974, project engineer on the design
14 of the Bonny Glen Gas Plant. Plant Engineer, Bonny Glen.
15 Gas Engineer, Calgary. Staff gas engineer, Calgary.
16 Senior Engineer. Calgary. Superintendent, Gas
17 operations, Calgary. Assistant Superintendent, Gas,
18 Calgary. I joined Foothills, November, 1974.

1
2
3 Q Mr. Lazerte, will you ex-
4 plain why at compressor station one on the Foothills'
5 Pipeline you have allowed excess compression horsepower
6 to exist at capacity flow?

7 A Station 1, sighted 46
8 miles south of Taglu and five miles north of the Parsons
9 Lake junction is scheduled for start-up in the fall of
10 1982, year four. With all 17 stations installed and
11 the pipeline operating at its maximum capacity or
12 capability, the first station pulls approximately 12,000
13 or half of its rated horsepower of 24,000. In other
14 words, it is very lightly loaded.

15 We took this approach as this
16 station is closest to the major supply of gas, the
17 Taglu gas plant, and we wanted insurance against possible
18 outage of the plant booster compressor. This plant
19 supplies about 80 percent of the total gas in the pipe-
20 line. The main treating portion of the plant operates
21 at a pressure of 1080 Psia and following processing for
22 water and liquid hydrocarbon removal from the gas, it
23 is compressed and cooled for entry into the pipeline.

24 The final compression of the
25 gas from 1080 pounds per square inch to the higher
26 pipeline pressure will probably be accomplished using
27 a gas turbine driven centrifugal compressor of the same
28 general type as proposed for use by Foothills.

29 Though very dependable, this
30 machine will unavoidably suffer some down time during

1 given
2 a / year, and for these few hours or days the Producer
3 plant delivery pressure will be reduced to 1080 PSIA.
4 Under these plant compressor outage conditions, we can
5 maintain the design delivery volume from Taglu of 1900
6 million cubic feet per day with Station 1 equipment
7 fully loaded and developing the rated horsepower of
8 23,550.

9 With the above plant outage
10 conditions, if station 1 installed horsepower was only
11 15,000 to meet normal requirements, the reduction in
12 receipt volume would be much more severe than we will
13 experience. Also, if Station 1 was located further south
14 with the 24,000 horsepower unit, the volume reduction
15 would be more severe as less surplus horsepower would
16 be available during a plant compressor outage.

17 In summary, installing surplus
18 horsepower at station 1 allows more gas to be transported
19 in the event of a low delivery pressure condition at the
20 Taglu Plant.

21 Q Will you explain what
22 criteria you used in determining the receipt conditions
23 for gas at the processing plants?

24 A Initially the receipt
25 pressure for the Producer gas plant sales gas will be
26 1250 PSIG which corresponds to the maximum operating
27 pressure of the pipe. Of course, there is a possibility
28 our system may ultimately operate ^{at} 1440 PSIG so that the
29 Producer plant compression equipment should have this
30 higher discharge pressure capability in the event we
 find at some later date that we can operate at the

1 higher pressure.

2 We plan on receiving gas from
3 the plants at a temperature of 25 degrees Fahrenheit
4 to be consistent with our operating philosophy of a
5 chilled line, that is below freezing temperature down
6 to Fort Simpson, to prevent degradation of the perma-
7 frost. This receipt temperature of 25 degrees Fahren-
8 heit will ensure arrival at the suction of the first
9 operating downstream compressor station below 32 degrees
10 Fahrenheit under all conditions.

11 With regard to the gas quality
12 specifications, these are fairly standard to a point.
13 That is, the delivered gas will not contain: (1) solids,
14 liquids or objectionable substances which would cause
15 problems, (2) more than one grain of hydrogen sulphide
16 or ten grains of total sulphur per hundred cubic feet and
17 (3) more than two percent carbon dioxide without our
18 permission. Also, it should be free of oxygen and in
19 no event should it contain more than four tenths of one
20 percent.

21 Foothills will have two require-
22 ments that are not standard for normal gas transmission
23 lines. Firstly, the water vapour content should not ex-
24 ceed 0.4 pounds per million standard cubic feet which
25 corresponds to a water dewpoint of minus 5 degrees Fah-
26 renheit at 1250 PSIG. This specification is more
27 rigorous than normal due to our higher operating press-
28 ure and lower operating temperature. Both these
29 variables favour the formation of solids or hydrates in
30 the pipeline which could interfere with the passage of

1 gas so this condition should not be allowed to develop.
2 In order for solids or hydrates to form, free water in
3 liquid form must be present. We ensure, therefore, this
4 doesn't occur by having the Producers remove most of it
5 from the delivered gas. By setting the above specificat-
6 ion, no water droplets can form until the pressure
7 increases to 1440 PSIG and the temperature drops to minus
8 3 degrees Fahrenheit. This will not happen in our pipe-
9 line because even if we do operate eventually at 1440
10 PSIG, we will not allow the temperature to drop lower
11 than 10 degrees Fahrenheit under normal conditions.

12 Secondly, we have specified a
13 series of hydrocarbon dewpoints which limit the quantity
14 of heavy hydrocarbon constituents the Producers can pass
15 into the line. This is done by specifying a number of
16 pressures and temperatures at which the first drop of
17 hydrocarbon liquid will form in the line and setting
18 these at such a level that they will not occur under
19 normal operating conditions at any point in the pipeline
20 system. Condensation of hydrocarbon liquids in the line
21 is to be avoided as they increase the pressure drop,
22 increase horsepower and fuel requirements, and, if
23 present in sufficient quantities, can damage compressor
24 blading and flood inlet separators.

25 Q Will you explain the
26 volume build up which Foothills is using and how this
27 build up was arrived at?

28 A The volume build up is
29 obviously firmly tied in with the estimate of total
30 reserves, deliverability, rates of discovery and market

1 considerations. The build up was developed by Mr.
2 Mackie and he provided these volumes to me. What I would
3 like to discuss now is the engineering aspects related
4 to the rate of build up. I believe we have a slide.
5 Foothills shows a volume build up, by years and field,
6 as per slide 1.

7 MR. GIBBS: Would you
8 just hang on a second, Mr. Lazerte?

9 WITNESS LAZERTE: Gladly,
10 I don't need to deal with this in too much detail. We
11 show the Parsons Lake delivery volumes --

12 Q That's the
13 right hand --

14 WITNESS LAZERTE: On the right
15 hand side of the slide. We show Taglu in the middle,
16 and we show the total delivery on the left hand side.
17 Now, please note that these are receipt volumes, as Mr.
18 Mirosh commented, receipt volumes into the pipeline at
19 the northern end.

20 Now, you will notice lastly
21 the capability figures in the text, there was an error,
22 the 2,500 of course should be 25 -- that's still done
23 wrong -- my apologies, it should be 2550, so we've
24 managed to make an error there.

25 MR. GIBBS: Compound
26 the error?

27 WITNESS LAZERTE: I'm afraid
28 so.

29 Q That
30 capability line on the bottom then, just to make certain,

1 the first number should be 2,550?

2 A Yes.

3 Q And the next one 2050
4 is correct, as is the last one, 500?

5 A Yes, the number on the
6 left is the incorrect one.

7 You will note that we have
8 assumed all of the first year gas to be produced from
9 Taglu since our information indicated that planning and
10 development of this field, plant and related facilities,
11 was somewhat ahead of the Parsons development. We fur-
12 ther assumed that 10 percent of the Taglu stream
13 originated from the Niglintgak field.

14 The volume build up shown on
15 the slide coincides with the compressor station
16 schedule shown on Slide 2.

17 Now again, there has been a
18 slight omission from this slide and you will notice
19 when I read from the text what it is. You will note
20 that to flow the first year volume of 800 million a day,
21 we require that two full stations and four partial
22 stations be --

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
24 Mr. Lazerte. Mr. Gibbs, you gave me copies of these
25 slides. Should these be marked as exhibits as the
26 witness refers to each slide?

27 MR. GIBBS: I had proposed to,
28 sir. We can mark the first one now, or both of them
29 if you wish.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: I think you

1 might mark the one called volume build-up as the next
2 exhibit.

3
4 (SLIDE MARKED VOLUME BUILD UP MARKED AS
5 EXHIBIT NUMBER 234)

6
7 MR. GIBBS:

8 Q Mr. Lazerte, perhaps in
9 explaining this, you might be able to do it better by
10 standing and pointing to the slide itself, if that's
11 more convenient?

12 A Yes, I agree.

13 Just reading from the text
14 before I do, I will just read that first sentence again.
15 You will note that to flow the first year volume of
16 800 million a day, we require that two full stations
17 and four partial stations be operational in November,
18 1979.

19 If I may start, the original
20 slide shows a reference to this November, 1979 start-up
21 of two full stations and four partial. That information
22 was then printed down in here and and we lost it some-
23 where along the route, so this is the start-up date
24 referred to on the first one, and just very briefly,
25 if I may go through this. This is a construction sched-
26 ule and that shows the timing and I don't think we need
27 to go through every year. fabricating transport materials
28 to staging areas, this is the key on this schedule. Of
29 course to try to meet this November 1979 date so trans-
30 porting here -

1 and then you notice the other construction activities
2 and they just flow on down, coming into November, 1979
3 and that's what we are aiming to meet.

4
5 MR. GIBBS: Perhaps we could
6 now mark that one, sir, as Exhibit 235?

7
8 (SLIDE RE COMPRESSOR STATION SCHEDULE MARKED
9 EXHIBIT 235)

10
11 MR. GIBBS:

12 Q Would you carry on now,
13 Mr. Lazerte?

14 A By a partial station I
15 mean that only the pipeline booster package is missing
16 and all other equipment is installed and the station
17 has chilling capability. The first year requirement for
18 major rotating equipment is shown on slide 3.

19 Now, we are getting into some
20 specifics here. You will note that there are two full
21 stations here, station 7 is a full station; it has a
22 gas turbine driver and compressor, 24,000 horsepower.
23 The chilling capability is there matching it, 15,000.
24 You will note at station 15, gas horsepower 30,000.
25 We stopped chilling at 14, so that is a full station.
26 There is no chilling to go in there, so 7 and 15 are
27 full, then please note 5, 9, 11 and 13 had everything
28 installed but the gas compressor. So those are the four
29 partial stations referred to in the text.

30 MR. GIBBS: Could the copies of

1 that slide be marked, sir, as Exhibit 236?

2
3 (SLIDE RE YEAR REQUIREMENT, GAS TURBINE COMPRESSOR
4 UNITS MARKED AS EXHIBIT 236)

5 MR. LAZERTE:

6 A May I continue?

7 MR. GIBBS: Yes, please.

8 A This requirement for
9 7 units should be relatively easy for the gas turbine
10 compressor industry to supply and meet delivery commit-
11 ments. Note that orders for this equipment are scheduled
12 to be issued in mid-1976, moved to the site in the river
13 shipping season in 1977, and hooked up in the 1978-79
14 construction years, and that was what was portrayed on
15 the earlier slide.

16 The second year flow of
17 1200 million a day requires the construction of Station
18 3, with one each of a gas and propane compressor and
19 installation of a gas compressor at station 11 for a
20 total of three units. This commitment should be relat-
21 ively easy to meet without difficulty.

22 The third year flow of 1600
23 million a day dictates that we construct station 17,
24 one 30,000 horsepower unit and install a gas compressor
25 at stations 5, 9 and 13, for a total of four units.

26 The remainder of the units are
27 installed to be operational in the fourth year and a
28 total of 16 units are required. This will require
29 careful scheduling to ensure purchasing and construction
30 commitments are met.

Mirosh, Lazerte, Fensch
In Chief

1 I'd like to make one quick
2 comment, note, 16 units, not 16 stations.

3 Q What's the significance
4 of that, Mr. Lazerte?

5 A I'm pointing our here
6 simply, I'm dealing with the capabilities of the industry
7 to manufacture these compressor units, and I stress
8 that point.

9 Q Will you now explain why
10 24,000 Horse Power gas compression units were selected
11 for the chilled section of the pipeline?

12 A The primary consideration
13 is that the gas compression equipment selected must be
14 commercially available. There is no point in giving
15 serious consideration to equipment sizes that will not
16 be available when orders are to be placed. Also it is
17 important that the selected units be proven and not
18 experimental. We want something that will start up
19 smoothly and stay on the line, with an absolute minimum
20 of modification or change. The reliability and mechanical
21 availability must be high.

22 Secondly, compression equipment
23 should be of a size which does not violate the temperature
24 constraints imposed on the pipeline. By this, we mean
25 that if the units are too large they will be spaced many
26 miles apart, and with the flowing ^{gas} expanding in the line,
27 if the pressure drops, there is a cooling effect which
28 will result in subzero temperatures under certain con-
29 ditions. This condition could exist if we had a chiller
30 failure at a given station, and sub-cooled the gas at the

Mirosh, Lazerte, Hensch
In Chief

1 immediate upstream station to compensate for this outage.
2 The end result would be to reduce the flowing volume to
3 maintain minimum operating temperatures by reducing the
4 expansion effect.

5 In our detailed horsepower
6 optimization studies, we examined the following gas
7 turbine sizes:

8 24,000 H.P.

9 26,400 H.P.

10 29,200 H.P.

11 37,000 H.P.

12 The larger units proved to be
13 slightly more economical on a cost of service basis
14 but the difference was minimal. The 37,000 and the
15 29,200 H.P. units were eliminated from further consider-
16 ation in the chilled portion of the line north of Fort
17 Simpson, due to the low gas temperature resulting from
18 the outage conditions discussed above. Of the remaining,
19 the 24,000 H.P. unit was found to be marginally the most
20 economical in the chilled section of the line.

21 In summary, we selected 24,000
22 H.P. gas compressor units for the chilled portion of the
23 line as they are commercially available, conform to
24 temperature constraints and result in a low cost of
25 service.

26 Q Mr. Hensch you are the
27 Supervisor of Facilities Planning for the Alberta Gas
28 Trunk Line Company Limited?

MR. HENSCH:

29 A Yes.

30 Q Does the sheet attached to the

1 prepared evidence, having your name at the top, accurately
2 describe your academic qualifications and experience?

3 A Yes.

4 Q Will you read that in please.

5 A Education, BSC Mechanical
6 Engineering, University of Alberta, Edmonton, 1968.

7 Experience, Engineer with Montreal Engineering 1968,
8 to 1970. Engineer with Alberta Gas Trunk Line 1970
9 to present. Professional affiliations, Association of
10 Professional Engineers, Geologists and Geophysists of
11 Alberta, Canadian Society of Mechanical Engineering.

12 Q Would you briefly explain
13 the principles behind the hydraulic studies you carried
14 out to determine the pipe system required?

15 A The stimulation of gas
16 flow in pipelines is a well developed science and we
17 have done nothing new. Through an application of simple
18 principles of fluid dynamics in the form of mathematical
19 equations, we are able to predict the pressure and
20 temperature profile for any given pipeline system for any
21 given flow. The equations used are.

22 The Energy Equation.

23 The first law of thermodynamics which is a relationship
24 describing the conservation of energy.

25 The Continuity Equation:

26 A statement describing the conservation of mass.

27 The Momentum Equation:

28 Newton's second law of
29 conservation of momentum which states that the force is
30 equal to the rate of change momentum.

1 A Study of Part 3, Section 3B-7 of
2 the Foothills Application will show these equations to
3 be in the form rather unfamiliar to the gas industry.
4 To be able to calculate the temperature profile, it was
5 necessary to avoid making the simplified assumption that
6 the flow of temperature remains constant over the length
7 of the pipeline. In addition, the kinetic energy
8 term has been attained for completeness, thus necessi-
9 tating use of the differential form of the equations.

10 The input data required to
11 carry out the hydraulic studies are gas quality, temper
12 ature and pressure of receipt gas. gas supply and delivery
13 points, ground temperature and thermal conductivity and
14 pipeline route and its elevation profile. Mr. Lazerte
15 has spoken to the gas quality and supply. The pipeline
16 and elevation data was provided by Foothills Pipeline and the
17 other input requirements has been obtained from Alberta
18 Gas Trunk Line as a result of their membership in the
19 study group.

20 Q Can you explain the
21 relationship between your office hydraulics studies and
22 the field location studies which have been undertaken by
23 Foothills?

24 A The result of an office
25 study is a design which has compressor stations ideally
26 located to meet hydraulic requirements. The final
27 system configuration however, is not struck until input
28 has been obtained from both aerial photography analysis
29 and field reconnaissance. Each site initially located by
30 the office study is reviewed to ensure suitability of

1 terrain, site access, and reasonable distance from
2 settlements. Should a site need to be changed, the new
3 location is submitted to the office hydraulics studies
4 to determine the impact of such a move on the proposed
5 system's capability. Often the impact is one which may
6 require^a new design and possibly further site survey.
7 As a result, striking a system design is not finalized until
8 both the flow and the geographical constraints are met.

9 Q Can you show how your
10 studies led you to conclude that a 42 inch pipeline is
11 appropriate for the Foothills system?

12 A Various combinations of
13 pipe diameters, working pressures and compressor station
14 horsepower were analyzed before Foothills chose to
15 present the 42 inch system as the one which would most
16 economically provide the transportation service required.
17 The analysis included consideration of 36 inch, 42 and
18 48 inch diameter pipe, working pressures of 911, 1250,
19 1440 and 1680 psig and horsepower blocks of 20,000,
20 24,000, 26,400, 30,000 and 35,000 H.P.

21 System designs were determined
22 for a flow range of 1000 MMCFD to 3000 MMCFD in increments
23 of 250 million. Capital costs for Operation and
24 Maintenance and fuel costs were estimated for each of
25 the designs and subsequently the cost of service for each
26 was calculated. A plot of cost of service versus flow
27 was then prepared.

28 We have two slides that
29 will illustrate the method of comparing cost of service
30 to the flow for each of the systems we studied.

1 Slide Number 1, illustrates a
2 cost of service comparison of just three of the alter-
3 natives we've considered in determining the pipe system.
4 The pipe system to put forward.

5 Q Could you go up and explain
6 that slide to us now, Mr. Hensch?

7 A On this slide we've just
8 chosen to demonstrate, our/^{procedures,} we select a 42 inch 48 inch,
9 1250 pound system, 42 inch 40 pound system, and a 36
10 inch 1680 pound system and at a constant horsepower of
11 24,000 H.P.

12 We prepared designs for each
13 of these three in the flow range that I just earlier
14 mentioned, 1000, 3000, and prepared cost estimates for
15 each. The result of that cost estimate is converted
16 into a third year cost of service calculation, which
17 appears on the vertical access first.

18 The comparison of the systems
19 in this fashion will demonstrate how each system has
20 an optimum value at which -- a volume at which---
21 it proves to be the optimum. I'm sorry.

22 The comparison of
23 the three, and our design volume of 2.4, we find
24 we are 42 by 1440, seems to be the most optimum and
25 as a result, we selected the 42 inch.

26 Q Might the photograph of
27 that slide be marked Exhibit 237.

28 (PHOTOGRAPH OF SLIDE MARKED EXHIBIT 237)

29 Q Mr. Hensch, Slide Number
30 2 is just a further illustration of this method of

1 prepared cost service of service to flow.

2 What we have here are just the comparisons of different
3 operating pressures / ^{systems for a} 42 inch pipe, with 24,000 H.P.

4 we're able to track out each system to find the minimum
5 at a particular volume. Here again, the 42 inch, 1440
6 system has proven to be the most economical at our
7 designed volume of 24 hundred million.

8 The 42 inch 1440 system might be rated to operate at
9 1250 has also been included, on the sketch and appears as
10 the yellow one here.

11 Once the criterion of safety of design has been applied to
12 the pipeline design after the economics have been carried out to
13 determine the right system we found our economics moved up to the
14 yellow line.

15 Q The safety factor increases
the cost of service?

16 A Yes. it has. We've not
17 shown the other systems with the same impact on the
18 premise that relatively they would all move upward.

19 Q Might the copy of that
20 slide be marked as Exhibit 238.

21 (SLIDE MARKED EXHIBIT 238)

22 Q Mr. Hensch, could you now
23 explain how system deliverabilities are affected by
24 either compression unit or chilling unit outages.

25 A Gas compression on the
26 proposed Foothill system is accomplished by 17 compressor
27 stations. The northerly 13 of these stations are
28 to consist of 24,000 ISO Horsepower turbo compressor
29 units, for gas compression and 15,000 ISO horsepower
30 units for gas cooling while stations 15, 16 and 17 contain

1 29,200 ISO horsepower units for gas compression only.
2 Considering first gas compression unit outages, the
3 system deliverability is naturally dependent on the
4 number of units down and the locations of these
5 particular outages.
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Table 3B-13.14 of the submission outlines in detail the seasonal delivery volumes as anticipated. The annual delivery from station 17 is expected to be approximately 850 BCF, whereas the normal seasonal average delivery volume is approximately 840 BCF. It is evident, therefore, that the system is capable of delivering the average receipt volume of 2,400 million cubic feet per day on an annual basis, even when station outages are considered.

Considering now the effect of chiller outages, the system deliverability is not seriously affected under these conditions. Average day flows can be maintained for both winter and summer periods, and this is accomplished by reducing the temperature of the gas discharging from the station upstream of the outage to 10 degrees from the normal 25 degrees Fahrenheit. The gas temperature, however, is not allowed to drop to less than zero degrees Fahrenheit. In any case, for the fully powered system as per year

1 5 and a single unit outage, the system deliverability is
2 in the order of 2,360 million per day. Chiller unit out-
3 ages can generally, therefore, be counteracted so as
4 not to seriously affect the system deliverability.

5 MR. GIBBS: Mr. Commissioner,
6 this panel is now available for cross-examination.

7
8 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. MARSHALL:

9
10 Q Mr. Mirosh, on page 2 of
11 your prepared evidence, question 3, in your answer you
12 are dealing with differences between the two systems
13 and you state at the top of the page, "In contrast
14 Foothills would cease chilling and ensure that gas
15 temperature remain above 32 degrees F south of Fort
16 Simpson. Have you found that reference, sir?

17 MR. MIROSH:

18 A Yes.

19 Q Could you take a look at
20 figure 3B-13.11, which is one of your flow diagrams.

21 MR. GIBBS: Can you give us
22 the number of the volume?

23 MR. MARSHALL: Part 3,
24 facilities.

25 A 13.11?

26 Q I think it should be
27 13.5, or 13.11, have you found that near the back of the
28 volume?

29 A Yes, I have that.

30 Q Sir, my instructions are

1 that this shows, among other things, the temperatures
2 of the gas as it enters stations and leaves them, is
3 that correct?

4 A Excuse me, I didn't hear
5 that?

6 Q Did you want a copy of
7 this?

8 THE COMMISSIONER: Just wait
9 until I get a copy of this. Do you want to start again
10 with your questions on this?

11 MR. MARSHALL: Certainly, sir.

12 Q Mr. Mirosh on page 2,
13 question 3, you were dealing with the differences in the
14 two systems and you say, "In contrast Foothills would
15 cease chilling and ensure that gas temperatures above
16 32 degrees south of Fort Simpson", and the reference
17 then is to figure 3B-13.11, which is a flow diagram in
18 the Foothills' application materials.

19 To begin with sir, why is it
20 important that the gas temperatures remain above 32
21 degrees in this area south of Fort Simpson? What's
22 the purpose being served?

23 A Well the primary reason
24 that we are taking this approach is that generally
25 south of Fort Simpson, we understand that there is far
26 less permafrost in the discontinuous zone than there is
27 in fact permafrost, so that we feel that degrading this
28 small amount of permafrost is far less of a problem to
29 our pipeline design approach than it would be to create
30 a bulb of permafrost through most of the non-permafrost

1 zone.

2 Q And it's a matter of some
3 concern then, to make sure that you're able to maintain
4 the temperature above 32 degrees Fahrenheit in this
5 area, is it?

6 A Pardon me?

7 Q Yes, to make sure that
8 the gas temperature does remain above 32 degrees in
9 this area?

10 A That's the approach we
11 have taken.

12 Q Sir, it is my instruction
13 that this particular diagram shows that gas leaves
14 station number 14 at 44 degrees Fahrenheit, and it arr-
15 ives at station number 15 at 26 degrees Fahrenheit.
16 Do I misread the diagram?

17 A No, that's correct, we
18 have picked that up here.,

19 Q What does that mean?

20 A I'm advised there is an
21 asterisk missing off this particular drawing, which is
22 present on other drawings of an earlier number in that
23 sequence, which refers to a gas heater which is
24 installed at station 14, and which, if it were the case,
25 would increase the discharge temperature from 14 such
26 that the temperature into 15 would be higher than 26
27 degrees as shown.

28 Q Sir, has any consideration
29 been given to Foothills to the impact on the throughput
30 that the operation of such a heater would have?

1 A Well it obviously does
2 affect the throughput. The higher the gas temperature
3 is, the tighter that line suction would be.

4 Q Do you know precisely, sir,
5 what effect the heater would have at this location?

6 A I don't think we could
7 answer that now, no.

8 Q Do I take it this was
9 something that was discovered after the application
10 materials had been printed?

11 A Yes, I think you could
12 say that this particular schematic must have been an
13 oversight.

14 Q Well is it the schematic
15 that was an oversight, sir, or was it that it wasn't
16 realized that the result was going to be that gas would
17 be at 26 degrees, that is below the 32 degrees Fahren-
18 heit temperature that you are trying to maintain?

19 A No, the schematic
20 obviously shows 26 degrees, and had we picked that up
21 we would have increased the discharge temperature out
22 of station 14. I would call that an oversight.

23 Q Sir, my information is
24 that at maximum flow conditions at which you must
25 operate at certain times of the year, that you have
26 only one percent excess horsepower, either in the
27 winter or the summer, with which to operate this heater.
28 Do you know anything about that?

29 A Well the heater doesn't
30 operate with horsepower. Did you say one percent excess

1 horsepower to operate the heater?

2 Q One percent excess at
3 station 15 to make up the loss?

4 A Yes, this schematic shows
5 station 15 horsepower to be very nearly used up.

6 Q Would it not follow then,
7 sir, that at the higher flowing temperature, it would
8 result in reduction of the throughput?

9 A Yes, there would be some
10 reduction.

11 Q Has this been calculated?

12 A There would be a reduct-
13 ion after the horsepower is used up, I should clarify
14 that.

15 Q I see. Do you know what
16 that reduction would be, sir?

17 A I don't, no.

18 Q Do you have any inform-
19 ation, sir, as we have not been able to find it in the
20 application, as to the size of the heater and when it
21 would be operated and so on? Do you have such things
22 as design notes or cost Data on it?

23 A Yes, we have. Mr. Lazerte
24 is able to comment on that.

25 MR. LAZERTE:

26 A Yes we have design
27 calculations on the heater, and just to clarify or to
28 add to what Mr. Mirosh said, the whole intent in this
29 area, and it shows on an earlier sheet, namely 13.4,
30 -- excuse me, let me find the correct sheet. The

1 correct number is 13.3. If you look under station 14,
2 there is an asterisk beside the temperature of 20
3 degrees on that particular sheet, a note down below,
4 and it says "Operate heater", and you will notice also
5 on that particular sheet, that coming into 15 we show
6 16 degrees.

7 Now, the whole intent here is
8 to operate that heater as a trim heater, and we didnot
9 feel we had time to go back and make these small adjust-
10 ments, so we simply added that footnote and obviously
11 missed it on one or more drawings. The second deal,
12 I believe you mentioned the costing of the heaters.

13
14 Yes, they were costed
15 -- sized and costed. My recollection is that there's
16 five of them, they are very large. They were priced
17 out by National Tank.

18 MR. MARSHALL: I wonder if
19 that data might be made available, Mr. Gibbs?

20 MR. GIBBS: Yes, as long as
21 it doesn't violate some competitive situation with
22 National Tank. Mr. Lazerte could tell me that.

23 MR. LAZERTE:

24 A I rather feel -- well
25 perhaps we could give them everything but the cost
26 material.

27 MR. GIBBS: Would that be
28 sufficient for you?

29 MR. MARSHALL: Yes it would.

30 MR. GIBBS: All right, we will

1 undertake to provide that, sir.

2 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you.

3 Q Mr. Mirosh, turning to
4 the third page of your prepared evidence, you are deal-
5 ing with an answer to question 4, I'm not quite certain
6 whether or not you amended the testimony from what was
7 circulated. In the middle of that paragraph, if I could
8 pick up the sentence, you are saying, "...could carry
9 an average day receipt volume of approximately 2.4
10 BCF per day a minimum cost of service for that parti-
11 cular configuration". Did you add "at a minimum cost
12 of service"?
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 A Yes I did.

2
3 Q DO I understand correctly,
4 though sir, and I'm thinking of the comment that you
5 make at page 5 in your fifth answer, that really 1,440
6 PSIG produces a lower cost of service?

7 A Yes, it does but under
8 the assumption that he would be able to carry a larger,
9 or that a larger volume of gas would be available. If
10 you carried the same volume, that is 2.4 at the higher
11 pressure, I believe the cost of service would be higher
12 than at 1,250.

13 Q Sir, do I understand
14 correctly that the original proposal of Foothills was
15 to carry the 2. -- was to carry the higher volume at
16 the 1,440 PSIG, and that because of metallurgical con-
17 siderations, the system was in effect derated to the
18 lower throughput level, and ^{the} lower operating pressure?

19 A No, I don't think that's
20 quite the sequence. The beginning point was the volume,
21 and that determined the size and ideally had we had
22 more volume, and had we had confidence in being able
23 to operate at higher pressures, that would be the way
24 to go, but it happens that the volume which we have
25 selected, 2.4, matches the reduced pressure of 1,250.

26 Q What I guess I'm inter-
27 ested in, sir, is what came first?

28 A Between --

29 Q Was it the 2.4 figure
30 that came first or was 'this a figure that was developed

1 after the original concept was developed of operating at
2 1,440 PSIG with a 42 inch line?

3 A Well we were given the
4 volumes by Mr. Mackie and that was a number he suggested
5 we try to deliver.

6 Q Well then to pick up a
7 word that Mr. Hensch has used about derating of the
8 system, do I take it then that there was no derating
9 of the Foothills system, that it was always intended to
10 transport the lower volumes at the 1,250 PSIG pressure?

11 A Well the intent was
12 always to deliver about 2.4 BCFD. It happens that we
13 can do it with the system we are proposing, at a minimum
14 cost of service.

15 Q Sir, there is reference
16 in this panel's evidence to the possibility of the
17 pressure being increased to 1,440 PSIG. I believe
18 there are two statements to that effect in the evidence.
19 You are aware of those?

20 A Yes.

21 Q Can you tell me sir,
22 what Foothills' intentions are with respect to operating
23 pressures?

24 A Well certainly the stat-
25 ion spacing is designed at 1,250 pounds, so our intent
26 is to operate at 1,250 pounds, but we can't escape the
27 fact that if we felt comfortable and were able to prove
28 to ourselves and to the regulatory authorities that we
29 could go to a higher pressure, and if there was more
30 volume to justify that, that would be one of the

1 possible ways of increasing the throughput. Down the
2 road, when we were looking at larger volumes, we would
3 evaluate increasing the pressure against adding loop
4 against adding compression, that would be one of our
5 thoughts, but we would have to verify that we could
6 elevate the pressure from 1,250.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: Would this
8 be a convenient time to adjourn for coffee?

9 MR. MARSHALL: Yes, it would,
10 Mr. Commissioner.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: We will
12 take a break for coffee. I felt we would sit tonight
13 and I thought that we would carry on with morning and
14 afternoon sittings the rest of the week, with evening
15 sittings on Wednesday and Thursday as well as tonight.
16 If it turns out that that's something the counsel are
17 not happy with, they can let me know in due course.

18
19 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

2 MR. MARSHALL:

3 Q Mr. Mirosh, when we broke
4 off, we were discussing why it was Foothills ended up
5 with pipe operating at 1250 PSIG, 42 inch diameter pipe
6 and 0.540 inch wall thickness. Now I believe you
7 explained that that matched the projections of gas
8 requirements and gas availability from the Delta, and
9 this really produced the optimum system, am I summarizing
10 your comment correctly?

11 A Yes, I think it's fair to
12 say that if 2.4 BCFD were being received at the top end,
13 that the system we propose would carry that gas at a
14 minimum cost of service.

15 Q Well sir the difficulty
16 I have then is with the Exhibit 238 which was the
17 first year cost of service versus flow rate diagram
18 that was presented by your panel. Do you have a copy
19 of that sir?

20 A Do you have a copy of
21 the coloured version?

22 Q Do I understand Exhibit
23 238 correctly when it suggests that for a volume of
24 2400 MMCFD, which is the proposed volume to be transported
25 by Foothills, --

26 A Yes.

27 Q The cost of service, first
28 year cost of service on a cents per MCF for 100 miles
29 basis, which is the chart of the scale on the left hand
30 side, for 42 inch pipe, of .54 wall thickness, operating

1 at 1440 PSIG, would be approximately 2.5 cents, whereas
2 when the pressure is reduced to 1250 PSIG, the tariff
3 would be approximately half a cent higher, roughly,
4 it's difficult, there's no lines on this graph, but I
5 would say roughly 15 to 20 percent higher cost of
6 service. Do I read the exhibits correctly sir?

7 A That's probably an inter-
8 pretation, yes.

9 Q Well is it the right
10 interpretation sir?

11 A Well it's difficult to
12 extrapolate but it looks about what it might be.

13 Q Well then sir, wouldn't
14 your optimum situation with 42 inch pipe of 0.54 wall
15 thickness be to operate at 1440 PSIG, because that
16 would result in a cost of service that would be roughly
17 15 to 20 percent lower than if you were operating at the
18 lower pressure?.

19 A Yes, I think we stated that
20 operating at the higher pressure would be a lower cost
21 of service but again, we have been advised that due to
22 the metallurgical constraints due to the stress level of
23 internal pressure, we should back that pressure off to
24 1250.

25 Q Well I want to get into
26 those metallurgical considerations in a minute sir, but
27 just dealing with that fixed volume, if you like, of
28 2400 MMCF per day, which Exhibit 238 has selected,
29 metallurgical considerations aside, your optimum situation
30 for
/ 42 inch pipe would be at the 1440 PSIG level, would it

1 not?

2 A Well, in fact, this graph
3 shows that at 1680, and if you had higher throughputs,
4 there would be another optimum.

5 Q That's using pipe of
6 different wall thickness.

7 A Correct.

8 Q Than what Foothills has
9 selected. Using the pipe that Foothills has selected
10 42 inch and .54 inch wall thickness, there is an
11 advantage to the consumers, if you can operate at 1440
12 PSIG rather than at 1250 PSIG?

13 A Yes, if the system is
14 as shown here, that's true and I believe that this is
15 correct. But again, we don't feel that we can do that.

16 Q Well we'll get into that
17 in a minute sir, but we're talking about a 15 to 20
18 percent higher cost of service, because of derating of
19 the system to 1250. It's less than the optimum.
20 Granted there are reasons which we'll get into. Isn't
21 that so sir, that there is a 15 to 20 percent penalty
22 involved in the cost of service in derating the Foothills
23 system to 1250 PSIG?

24 A There is a penalty
25 involved in derating yes.

26 Q And is it within that
27 area, 15 to 20 percent?

28 I admit my estimate may be a
29 bit rough but taking it from your graph, which my copy
30 does not have all the graph lines drawn on it.

1 A I would say that if that's
2 what you calculate, then that's probably what it is.
3 But that may not be necessarily the case in the final
4 analysis if one did a full cost of service for all
5 the years.

6 Q Well sir, am I to take
7 the graph that is Exhibit 238 as being accurate or am
8 I not?

9 A It's accurate for a first
10 year cost of service, and with the parameters as Mr.
11 Hensch described for undertaking that.

12 Q All right then sir, when
13 Foothills is faced with this 15 to 20 percent penalty
14 if you like, or increase in its cost of service, through
15 derating its system, did it give consideration to
16 any other steps that it might take other than derating
17 to 1250 PSIG which might minimize the penalty, if you
18 like, that the consumers would ultimately have to bear?

19 A I think to be fair we
20 looked at 42 inch and decided that was the right size,
21 and that that was the right wall thickness, and stuck
22 with that.

23 Q Were there optimization
24 studies done to determine whether some other pipe size,
25 or some other wall thickness or combinations thereof,
26 would produce the lower overall cost of service?

27 A Well I believe the other
28 curve which was displayed showed other studies which were
29 carried out.

30 Q Do I take it sir that

1 Exhibit 237, which I take it is the document you're
2 referring to, and shows three different combinations
3 48 inch, 42 inch and 36 inch pipe with the wall thicknesses
4 and pressures indicated thereon, sets out the various
5 combinations and alternatives that were considered in
6 these optimization studies or is this part only of the
7 work that was done?

8 A I think in the application,
9 material, we have displayed other studies in addition
10 to these.

11 Q The point of interest to
12 me on Exhibit 237 is that while you show 42 inch pipe of
13 0.54 inch wall thickness you show it at 1440 PSIG
14 rather than at the 1250.

15 A That's correct.

16 Q But I took it from your
17 answer that you had determined that that was out of the
18 running, if you like, but because of metallurgical
19 considerations, you had to -- if you were using pipe of
20 that specification, you would have to go down to 1250
21 PSIG?

1
2 A We certainly, as I have stated,
3 would consider it 'downstream when we looked at expan-
4 sions, but for designing the system we used 1,250 pounds
5 for station spacing.

6 Q Do you know where the 42
7 inch pipe of .54 inch wall thickness at 1,250 PSIG
8 comes out on Exhibit 237? Where would the curve be in
9 relation to the other three?

10 A Well I think if you took
11 the previous exhibit and super-imposed it, then that
12 should be how it comes out.

13 Q Do I take it from your
14 answer sir, that Foothills, because of the metallurgical
15 considerations, simply decided to derate the 42 inch
16 system to 1,250 and did not really consider taking other
17 steps that would allow a 42 inch line of the same wall
18 thickness to be operated at a high pressure, higher
19 pressure, say 1,440?

20 A Well we weren't really
21 aware of any other steps that were proven that we could
22 apply.

23 Q Did Foothills give con-
24 sideration to putting crack arrestors on its 42 inch
25 line?

26 A We had discussions on
27 these but in these discussions we never did feel that
28 crack arrestors were a solution that we could feel
29 confident in.

30 Q Well sir, I believe we

1 discussed the problem that Foothills was having in that
2 derating the system to 1,250 really imposes a penalty
3 on consumers of 15 to 20 percent from what your study
4 showed would be an optimum pressure, that is 1,440.
5 Did it not seriously study other ways, other solutions
6 that would allow the pipeline, the 42 inch pipeline to
7 be operated at 1,440? You say you had discussions about
8 use of crack arrestors. Did it not have detailed
9 studies carried out?

10 A Well we were aware of
11 studies carried out in the study group up to the point
12 at which Alberta Gas Trunkline withdrew, and these
13 studies we never felt were conclusive, at that stage.
14 We have not carried out studies in that regard ourselves,
15 but I might point out that although the first year cost
16 of service does show a penalty for derating, the reason
17 for that derating is to reduce any possible future
18 penalties due to unstable crack propagation which may
19 occur. So that in effect, it's an insurance for the
20 consumers.

21 Q Well that would get into
22 a question which I presume the metallurgical panel might
23 better be able to deal with, and that is whether the
24 pipe of the specifications chosen has the ability to
25 resist the propagation of fractures.

26 A Yes.

27 Q Do I take it that that's
28 an area that you're not expert in, and it should be left
29 to the metallurgical panel?

30 A Yes.

1 Q Do I take it from the
2 answer you've given me to the question preceding that,
3 sir, that Foothill's has not carried out any studies as
4 to the costs that would be involved in installing
5 crack arrestors on a 42 inch line of the type proposed
6 in the application?

7 A That's correct.

8 Q Would it surprise you,
9 sir, to find that the installation of such crack
10 arrestors, would result in an increase in the capital
11 costs for the pipeline, that were taken in the broad
12 picture, rather insignificant, and would have very
13 little effect on the ultimate tariff?

14 MR. GIBBS: Surely my friend
15 is starting to give evidence on the use of crack
16 arrestors and their capital cost, and my witness has
17 said that he doesn't have much faith in crack arrestors,
18 so there's really not much point in asking him whether
19 it surprises him that they are expensive or inexpensive.

20 MR. MARSHALL: I can rephrase
21 the question.

22 Q In carrying out the
23 discussions that you say you've had about crack arrest-
24 ors, have you considered the additional capital cost
25 that would be required in order to install them?

26 A Well we really hadn't,
27 because in order to do that, we would have to have felt
28 that we could apply them, and we never did get to that
29 stage.

30 Q Sir, in not getting to

1 that stage, did you rely upon studies that were commiss-
2 ioned by Foothills? You say you never got to the point
3 of feeling that you could apply them. In reaching that
4 decision, did Foothills have the benefit of expert
5 advice that's incorporated in reports or studies?

6 A Well as I indicated
7 earlier, we had access to material which the study group
8 had prepared up until the point of Alberta Gas Trunk-
9 line's withdrawal, and on that basis, our experts have
10 not pointed out to us that we should be applying crack
11 arrestors.

12 Q Has Foothills had any
13 additional studies carried out?

14 A No sir, but we are plan-
15 ning studies and in fact they may be undertaken shortly.

16 Q What is the intended
17 scope of such studies, sir?

18 A TO study the stress
19 concentrations of crack arrestors on a pipeline.

20 Q Who will be carrying out
21 that work, sir?

22 A Foothills.

23 Q Are there any other
24 studies that are intended in this subject area?

25 A We don't contemplate any
26 others at the present time, no, sir.

27 Q Sir, at page 5 of your
28 prepared evidence in answer to question 6, you say,
29 "at station 17, gas discharge temperatures will be
30 limited to 80 degrees Fahrenheit by an aerial cooler".

1 Have you found the passage, sir?

2 A Yes, I have it.

3 Q Could you tell me, sir,
4 what the approach temperature is for the aerial cooler?

5 A I would be -- I think I
6 could pass that on to Mr. Lazerte, although he has
7 written 30 degrees down for me.

8 Q Could you explain what
9 the approach temperature means?

10 A Could I let Mr. Lazerte
11 carry that on?

12 Q Fine.

13 MR. LAZERTE:

14 A The approach temperature
15 is the exit gas temperature, minus the ambient air
16 temperature, and the 30 degrees used is normal in the
17 industry.

18 Q Does it follow, Mr.
19 Lazerte, that if the ambient temperatures are greater
20 than 50 degrees Fahrenheit, the discharge temperature
21 will be more than 80 degrees Fahrenheit?

22 A No, it does not.

23 Q Could you tell me, sir,
24 what the discharge temperature would be if the air
25 temperature were, say, 70 degrees? With an approach
26 of 30 degrees?

27 A Would you ask the
28 question again please?

29 Q Could you tell me what
30 the discharge temperature would be, assuming your 30

1 degree approach temperature, if the air temperature
2 were 70 degrees?

3 A I would expect with that
4 ambient air temperature that we would exceed the --
5 could possibly exceed the temperature of 80 degrees on
6 the outlet. Again, this comes down to exactly how much
7 beef, as it were, that you put into the design of this
8 unit, and in our final design, certainly we recognize
9 that temperatures in this area are going to hit 80, 85
10 degrees, and we'll design accordingly.

11 Q Well sir, if you had
12 temperatures even of 60 degrees, would you not be dis-
13 charging air at more than 80 degrees Fahrenheit?

14 A As I recall it, the
15 ambient used was approximately 60 degrees.

16 Q What results would obtain
17 if it's an ambient of 60 degrees?

18 A We might hit close to 80
19 with certain conditions built into the unit.

20 However, I might add I under-
21 stand the thrust of your question, but my whole feeling,
22 or the feeling is that if we do slightly exceed that
23 80 degrees on that line, the said effects are not going
24 to be of any consequence -- of serious consequence.
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q If it was considered
2 necessary by Foothills to keep the temperature to no
3 more than 80 degrees as has been indicated in the
4 testimony, would it be necessary when the ambient
5 temperatures were high to reduce the throughput?

6 A No we wouldn't take that
7 approach, we'd build a little more area in for very
8 little more money and handle this in the final design.
9 I think the wording here is a little bit loose, but
10 it expresses general intent.

11 Q The final design work
12 has still got to be done, with respect to this heater?

13 A Certainly. We have had
14 quotations on this equipment but certainly we'll be
15 looking at these finer points in the final design.

16 Q Now Mr. Lazerte, you
17 described in your evidence at some length why you have
18 allowed for excess compressor Horsepower at station
19 Number 1, at capacity flows, I believe, if I under-
20 stand it correctly, there is about 50 percent excess
21 at that station, is that correct.

22 A Yes.

23 Q I wasn't quite sure as
24 to why that had been allowed or designed for and perhaps
25 if I could just run through it and see if I understand
26 correctly, did you -- do I understand correctly that
27 you used sort of a conservative approach in providing
28 excess capacity at this station, because of your concern
29 about the possibility of the gas compressor at the TAGLU
30 Processing Plant going down?

1 A Yes.

2 Q Do I understand correctly
3 as well sir, that you have assumed that the compressor
4 at the Taglu station will be of the same general design
5 as that used in the Foothills system?

6 A Yes, they showed that on
7 their flow diagram.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: Who is they?

9 A. Gulf, Imperial and Shell in their four
10 volumes submitted to DIAND had a process flow
11 schematic of both plants and it showed on that schematic.

12 MR.MARSHALL: Q Why do you consider it so
13 important to have the excess capacity at year number one
14 station?
15 A Well precisely I guess
16 because it is the first station on that line. and by
17 being able to restore the pressure of course, it's the
18 vital link on the line.

19 Q Well what I don't understand
20 is this sir, if you've got basically the same compressor
21 at the Taglu Processing Plant as you have at your stations
22 one, two, three, four, five, six et cetera, isn't it
23 just as likely that one of the Foothills compressors will
24 go out as it is that the Taglu compressor will go out of
25 service?

26 A Yes, I think that that's
27 . true.

28 Q And don't you have the
29 same consequences in terms of decrease in your throughput,
30 if one of those other stations goes out?

A I think Mr. Hensch's

1 testimony covered compressor outages on our line, today.

2 Q Well I'm interested though
3 sir in your response to this because it's in your
4 testimony. Really, isn't there the same result, if one
5 of the other compressors goes out, as if the Taglu
6 Processing Plant Compressor goes out? They're basically
7 the same piece of equipment.

8 A No, but they're operating
9 under different conditions, of course the Taglu booster
10 compressor will be taking suction at 1080 so I guess
11 if we were going to do an analysis like you suggest, we
12 would have to get into some specifics.

13 Q Well sir, if compressor
14 station 4 were to go out, would the suction at compressor
15 station 5 be much off 1080?

16 A I'll yield that question
17 to the expertise of our hydraulic designer; I believe.

18 WITNESS HENSCH:

19 A I can't tell you, I'm
20 sorry. I would have to take a check on some flow
21 studies and see what they would look like.

22 Q What I'm getting to, Mr.
23 Lazerte is this. It seemed to me that the job that was
24 being done by the unit at the Taglu Plant was pretty
25 much the same job as was being done by the compressor
26 units all the way down the line. Is that not a correct
27 assumption?

28 WITNESS LAZERTE:

29 A The general statement is
30 correct, the specific statement probably is not.

1 Q Well then if you're building
2 in the over capacity at station Number one why don't you
3 also build it into station Number two and three and so
4 on, all the way down the line?

5 A I think we should look how
6 this generally developed. As a general comment, I'd
7 say that when we first went into the initial design on
8 the system, that as a simplification and not knowing where
9 the origin of the gas was, that we took the gas, we took
10 all of the designed gas in at the north end of the system.
11 I think then it's fair to say that on the original
12 runs then, Number one compressor became located at, I
13 think it's Mile 46, then followed the more detailed
14 runs and examining the horsepower there, we made the
15 decision as outlined in the transcript.

16 Q If I understand you correctly
17 sir and you've expressed I think what my advisors had
18 thought was probably the case, that in doing your initial
19 flow studies, you simply assumed all the gas was coming
20 from Taglu.

21 A That's correct.

22 Q And you did not incorporate
23 any gas from Parsons Lake or you assumed those Parsons
24 Lake volumes were coming from Taglu?

25 A Initially yes.

26 Q Yes.

27 Sir, with respect to the
28 location of that Station Number one, don't you think it
29 would have been better located downstream of the
30 Parsons Lake lateral junction?

1 A No, we looked at this in
2 detail, and found that was not the case. I'm not
3 prepared at this moment to go into the specifics of all
4 that, but roughly, a week's work was put into that
5 analysis and the recommendation was to leave it sited
6 where it is as being the correct site.

7 Q Do I understand then that
8 after the supply picture changed, you made no change
9 to the location of your compressor stations to what had
10 initially been selected?

11 A There was shifting, minor
12 shifting of stations of course, for reasons that you
13 have been told, I think in other panels. But, there was
14 no -- with the exception perhaps of one of two, there
15 was no major shifting, particularly of that station.

16 Q Particularly of that.
17 Sir, you mentioned that a detailed analysis was done of
18 the location of this station. I think you mentioned there
19 was a week's work involved in it. Is there a report that
20 pertains to that?

21 A There's an internal report
22 in Foothills, yes.

23 Q I suggest Mr. Gibbs that
24 might be relevant to the evidence of this panel and
25 might we have a copy of that.

26 MR. GIBBS. Well sir. I haven't
27 seen it. Unless there's something of a confidential
28 nature which we want to claim privilege, certainly we'll
29 produce if and if we do want to claim some privilege,
30 we will advise my friend and the inquiry.

1 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you Mr.
2 Gibbs.

3 Q Sir, at page 7 in answer
4 to question 11, you make a comment about the possibility
5 of the Foothills system ultimately operating a 1440
6 PSIG, and this Mr. Mirosh commented on, on this as
7 well, It was his comment I believe, that it would have
8 to be demonstrated that it was safe to do this. I was
9 just wondering what type of information would have to be
10 made available to Foothills before it would be satisfied
11 with respect to the safety of increasing the operating
12 pressure to 1440. What is it that you have in mind,
13 is it a period of successful operating at lower pressure
14 or is it some test information, what is it you have in
15 mind in making that statement?

16 A Mr Mirosh, is much more
17 -- has much more expertise in this area and I wouldn't
18 want to comment.

19 Q Mr. Mirosh?

20 WITNESS MIROSH.

21 A I think you mentioned one
22 possibility and that is gaining operating experience,
23 as studying how the system operates at 1250 pounds. But
24 I think before we made a major increase in pressure we
25 would probably have to carry out some metallurgical tests.
26 There are a number of ways we could go, one way might
27 be to, if we felt confident in operating at 1250 and had
28 some analytical proof that we could go higher, possibly
29 incrementing the pressure by small steps. if and when
30 this was approved by authorities, but the other more likely

1 way would be to carry out metallurgical testing.

2 Q It's the first suggestion
3 that I want to deal with sir. That is related to operating
4 experience. Do I understand you correctly that you would
5 operate at 1250 PSIG and then if you didn't have any
6 difficulties at that pressure, then you might consider
7 increasing the pressure incrementally?

8 A If at some point in time
9 we found that there were additional volumes available
10 and if we determined , after a study, that it might
11 be possible to do it by increasing the pressure, and we
12 would feel confident in it, as opposed to looping
13 or adding compression.

14 Q Sir, if you're operating at
15 1250 PSIG, correct me if I'm wrong, that doesn't tell
16 you anything about the behaviour of the pipe in the
17 event of a ductile fracture, if you're operating at a
18 higher pressure, does it?

19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 A It does tell you how the
2 pipe behaves under permafrost conditions, something which
3 I believe very little experience is available on
4 currently, but truthfully, one would probably have to
5 carry out metallurgical testing in order to verify that
6 pressures can be raised.

7 Q Mr. Hensch, do I under-
8 stand correctly that Foothills has assumed that pipe
9 roughnesses of 0.002 inches would be obtained in develop-
10 ing its flow calculations?

11 MR. HENSCH:

12 A Yes.

13 Q This is in contrast with
14 the Arctic Gas estimate of 0.003 inches, is that
15 correct?

16 A Yes it is.

17 Q You're aware of that
18 difference?

19 A M'hmm, yes we are.

20 Q Which is really a 50
21 percent difference?

22 A A 50 percent difference
23 in roughness, yes.

24 Q Have you calculated the
25 effect on throughput, sir, if Foothills was unable to
26 obtain pipe with that pipe roughness, 0.002? But rather
27 was able to obtain it only with a roughness of 0.003
28 inches?

29 A We've made studies and
30 I'm afraid I can't tell you quantitatively the difference

1 in the throughputs. If I recall, they were quite small,
2 the differences in the capacity.

3 Q The figure that has been
4 given to me by my advisors, is that there would be a
5 reduction of about 1.6 percent of annual throughput, if
6 the greater roughnesses resulted?

7 A 1.6, that would be 24
8 million a day. Is that so?

9 THE COMMISSIONER: A reduction
10 of, not a reduction to, is that right?

11 MR. MARSHALL: Reduction of
12 about 1.6 percent of annual throughput.

13 A That's in the order, yes.

14 Q I was wondering, sir,
15 what it is that you base your conclusion upon that you
16 will be able to obtain pipe with a pipe roughness of
17 0.002?

18 A We have been able to
19 obtain some information prepared by I.G.T. and published
20 in their Monogram 10, I believe. We make reference to
21 it in the Foothills' application, and in that applicat-
22 ion they have stated the roughnesses of plastic lined
23 pipe, to vary from 200 to 300.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: What did
25 you call that, I.G.T.?

26 A I'm sorry, Institute of
27 Gas Technology.

28 MR. MARSHALL:

29 Q If I understand you
30 correctly, sir, the information that you had to work

1 from indicated that the range was from 2 to 3, and you
2 have selected the lower end of that range?

3 A Yes.

4 Q Do you have any reports
5 or data in written form, which indicates to your satis-
6 faction that you can indeed obtain pipe at that rough-
7 ness?

8 A I don't have any such
9 reports, no. Possibly the Foothills people might.

10 Q Sir, in the Foothills'
11 application, part 3, Tab B3, section 3.2.2, could you
12 get that in front of you please?

13 A What was that section
14 please?

15 Q Page 3B, -3.4, the
16 volume that's entitled "Part 3, Facilities". Do you
17 have that?

18 A 3.4 or 2.4?

19 Q 3B, 3.4? It's under a
20 section that's 3.2.2, to add some confusion to this.

21 A I'm sorry.

22 Q The second paragraph
23 I think is the one that we are interested in, sir. It
24 says, "During normal pipeline operation, the propane
25 unit will be operating at less than half of its rated
26 power, while full power will be used only when there is
27 a chiller system outage condition at a downstream
28 compressor station". Do you have the reference?

29 A Yes, I have that.

30 Q You say, at page 3B13.2,

1 the exhibit, and it's just a short statement, I think I
2 have got it accurately here, "A single chiller outage
3 will not impair delivery of volumes as all chilling
4 systems have been designed with sufficient excess
5 capacity to contend with such an eventuality".

6 A Yes.

7 Q Do I understand this to
8 mean that the chiller upstream of the chiller outage,
9 has sufficient design capacity to draw down its discharge
10 temperature sufficiently, so that the gas compressor
11 station with a chiller outage, can work at full capacity
12 without exceeding the station design discharge temper-
13 ature?

14 A Yes.

15 Q Now sir, in reaching this
16 conclusion, has consideration been given to the trans-
17 ient heat flow properties of the soil surrounding the
18 pipe?

19 A Excuse me, I'm --
20 could you repeat the question please?

21 Q I can approach it another
22 way. You have a chiller outage at a particular station,
23 and as I understand the exhibit, you are counting on
24 excess capacity at the upstream station in order to
25 provide additional chilling --

26 A That is so.

27 Q -- so as to ensure that
28 the gas that goes through the chiller, the compressor
29 station having the chiller outage, does not exceed 32
30 degrees Fahrenheit?

1 A After the compression
2 process, yes.

3 Q Now, in other words, you
4 have got to cool the gas at the upstream station or
5 stations, to lower temperatures than you ordinarily
6 would, so that even though it has to go through a stat-
7 ion at which the chiller is not in operation, the gas
8 temperature is not going to get up above freezing?

9 A Does not rise above.

10 Q Okay, now, you made a
11 statement to the effect that you're going to be able to
12 do this because you've got sufficient capacity in that
13 upstream chiller, so that it can provide the additional
14 chilling required, okay?

15 A M'hmm.

16 Q We're together?

17 A Yes.

18 Q Now there are a couple
19 of things about that, sir. The first one is, these
20 stations are some 40 to 50 miles apart, are they not?

21 A Yes.

22 Q And am I right that
23 for the gas to get from the upstream station to the
24 station where the chiller is out, would take maybe 3
25 hours, something in that order?

26 A It would depend on your
27 mathematics there, I'm not -- that's probably right,
28 the order.

29 Q Well, do you know or does
30 Mr. Mirosh know about how long it would take for gas to

1 get from one station in the system to the next station?

2 MR. MIROSH

3 A Well I think I would
4 have to state that under full flow conditions the gas
5 might be travelling about 30 miles an hour, but I haven't
6 done that calculation.

7 Q In any event, there
8 would be a time period --

9 A There would be a time
10 period, yes.

11 Q -- would there not?
12 And my advisors indicate that it would be about three
13 hours for the gas to get from the upstream station to
14 the station where the chiller is out. Perhaps we --
15 if you could accept that for purposes of our discussion,
16 subject to your recalculating it at a later time, it
17 would follow, would it not, sir, that during this three
18 hour period, if you like, there would be a problem at
19 the station where the chiller was out, because the gas
20 temperature would rise up above 32 degrees Fahrenheit,
21 and you still don't have any cooling effect from the
22 upstream station, because it takes three hours for the
23 gas to get from that station down to where you have the
24 outage, right?

25 MR. HENSCH:

26 A Okay.

27 Q Further, as the gas is
28 travelling from that upstream station to the one having
29 the outage, would there not be a flow -- would there
30 not be a heat transfer from the soil surrounding the

1 pipe to the gas within the pipe? Because you will have
2 much colder gas exiting the upstream station than you
3 previously had, and the frozen material surrounding that
4 pipe will be at a warmer temperature, so there will be
5 a transfer of heat from the frozen anulets around the
6 pipe into the pipe, into the gas and it will get warmed
7 up that way.

8 A You are probably correct
9 there, yes. It could warm up, but the conduction, if
10 we were finding that the conduction effects in the
11 temperature profile calculation were not as signi-
12 ficant as were the effects of the expansion of the gas,
13 and I guess --

14 Q But that is under steady
15 state conditions, and not transient conditions?

16 A Well, I'm not sure about
17 that. I can't see why they would not apply to the
18 transient.

19 Q I see, have you studied
20 that aspect of it?

21 A No we haven't, no.

22 Q You agree with me,
23 though sir, in general terms, there would be a transfer
24 of heat from the area around the pipe into that super-
25 chilled gas, if you like, the gas that's been cooled
26 to a much lower temperature in order to make up for the
27 outage downstream?

28 A Yes, potentially there
29 is a small amount of --

30 Q And as a result of that

1 warming of the gas, if you like, it's going to take
2 even longer than our three hour period in order for you
3 to be able to start to chill the gas below 32 degrees
4 Fahrenheit, on the discharge side of that station ex-
5 perienicing the chiller outage?

6 A That is possible, we have
7 not -- we have not made these studies, and I'm afraid
8 I can't answer the question.

9 Q Well during this period
10 of three hours plus, whatever it may be, what's happen-
11 ing downstream of the station having the chiller outage?
12 Are you not having thaw around the pipe downstream of
13 that station?

14 MR. MIROSH:

15 A I wonder if I could add
16 something. There is one obvious thing that could be done
17 and that is that particular station horsepower could be
18 cut back for a few hours. That's an operational refine-
19 ment which I'm sure would be developed if this thaw
20 did occur.

21 Q Doing that, of course,
22 would have an effect on your throughput?

23 A It would give you a
24 temporary reduction in throughput, until the system
25 stabilized, yes.

26 Q And is it fair to say,
27 Mr. Mirosh, that as this matter hasn't really been
28 studied in detail, you're not able to say how long you
29 would have to have a reduction in throughput, nor
30 indeed what the extent of that reduction would be?

Mirosh, Lazerte Hensch
Cross-Exam by Marshall

1 MR GIBBS: Surely sir that is:
2 an impossible question. You have to determine the
3 reason for the outage to start with and whether it's
4 three hours or an hour, and a half and what the ambient
5 temperatures are and so on. I don't see how anyone
6 could be expected to answer that.

7 MR. MARSHALL: Well I take it
8 it hasn't been studied anyway, so I can leave the point.

9 Q Mr. Mirosh, you would
10 agree with me though that it may well be necessary to
11 reduce the throughput in the event a chiller is lost
12 from the system.

13 WITNESS MIROSH.

14 A I think I would agree with
15 you to the point that we haven't really looked at it
16 yet, but I didn't quite follow your thinking earlier,
17 in that there is a Joule-Thompson temperature drop which
18 is always reacting oppositely to any heatflow into the
19 gas so that I think you were implying the gas was
20 picking up heat and therefore increasing in temperature,
21 which it may do due to conduction but there is an oppos-
22 ite effect of Joule-Thompson, which is in fact pushing the
23 temperature down, albeit in a transient or steady state
24 condition, and we haven't looked at this. But the two
25 do operate against each other. so it's not a simple
26 matter of picking heat up.

27 Q Mr. Hensch do I understand
28 correctly that the chillers planned for use by Foothills
29 will have a designed heat exchange rate of 84 million
30 BTU's per hour?

Mirosh, Lazerte, Hensch
Cross-Exam by Marshall

1 WITNESS HENSCH: I'm afraid
2 I'll have to turn that over to Rolly. He's more
3 familiar with the design of the machinery.

4 WITNESS LAZERTE: Excuse me, I
5 was talking to Mr. Mirosh.

6 Q Do the chillers planned for
7 use by Foothills have a designed heat exchange rate of
8 84 million BTU's per hour?

9 A Yes.

10 Q Does this fix the
11 designed propane flow rate on the physical size of the
12 propane compressor?

13 A Yes.

14 Q Is it true that propane
15 compressors can only operate within the limited range of
16 propane flow without surging or choking?

17 A Yes, we've looked at
18 this problem and there are a number of things that we
19 may or may not do. We look at this as a design refine-
20 ment.

21 Q You say you've looked at
22 it sir. Are there reports that have been prepared
23 dealing with your analysis of it?

24 A No, there are not. These
25 discussions were held with vendors of the compressors
26 and I should not say that, perhaps there are, perhaps
27 there are not. Discussions were held and this particular
28 point explored, we would not plan on handling it until
29 the detail design phase.

30 Q Well sir, I suggest to you

1 that even if there was excess Horsepower available for
2 much of the year, the capacity of the chillers really
3 cannot be increased to lower the gas discharge
4 temperature much below 25 degrees farenheit at any
5 station, for the reasons that we've just discussed, Do
6 you agree with that or do you disagree?

7 A No. I disagree.

8 Q Have you done anything to
9 model the performance of the chillers that it is proposed
10 will be used for Foothills?

11 A No.

12 We have performance curves
13 on them, performance charts on them and we know what
14 they certainly will do at the design phase, yes.

15 Q Mr. Hensch, is it correct
16 that the Foothills exhibit material does not allow for
17 or provide for any restrictions to the northern part
18 of the system due to compressor failures in the southern
19 part of the system. That would be in the Alberta Gas
20 Trunk Line's system?

21 WITNESS HENSCH:

22 A Could you just repeat that
23 again please. I'm sorry, --

24 Q Is it correct that the
25 Foothills Exhibit material does not allow for any
26 restrictions to the northern part of their system
27 due to compressor failures in the southern part of the
28 system, that would be A.G.T.L.

29 A You mean in the discussion
30 of the flows?

1 Q Yes.

2 A That is correct.

3 Q There is an assumption, is
4 there not, that the A.G.T.L. system would be able to
5 take all that Foothills was able to deliver?

6 A Yes

7 Q I take it it would follow
8 that the calculations of throughput of Foothills are not
9 really comparable then to those for the Arctic Gas
10 system in that the Arctic Gas system considers this
11 possibility from the northern end right through the
12 inter connection with Trans Canada, whereas Foothills
13 does not?

14 A That is so, except I
15 believe the calculations of the Trunk Line system have
16 similarly been carried out in sort of paralleling the
17 calculations for the Foothills system and the results
18 there were also that the Trunk Line system could move
19 the average delivery of the Foothills system.

20 Q I see, is that information
21 found in the A.G.T.L. submission?

22 A It should be, yes.

23 Q Perhaps you could let me
24 know where that information is.

25 MR. GIBBS: My friend is --

26 MR. MARSHALL: Well he's not
27 certain whether it's there, I've not been able to find it.

28 MR. GIBBS: He's got a stable
29 of advisors that would fill this room that can read that
30 material and if it's there, it is or it isn't, why he'll

1 come back and say we need it.

2 MR. MARSHALL: If we can't find it
3 in looking further, we'll be back to ask for it.

4 Thank you I think those are
5 all the questions I have.

6 MR. SCOTT: I think Mr. Bell and
7 Mr. Bayly would be next.

8 MR. BELL: I have no questions
9 at this moment sir.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Bayly?
11 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BAYLY:

12 Q If I could refer you
13 gentlemen to page 9 of your prepared evidence, the
14 pages aren't numbered but it's question 12, and the chart
15 to which you refer. What I've been confused by and
16 perhaps you can help me, is comparing this chart on
17 -- below question and answer 12 to Exhibit 238. Now,
18 as I read the chart after question 12, the gas flow in
19 the first year, totals 800 million cubic feet, is that
20 correct, per day?

WITNESS MIROSH

21 A Yes.

22 Q Now the chart that we
23 have refers to the first year cost of service versus
24 the flow rates and it only refers us to 2400 million
25 cubic feet per day, which as I read that chart, on page
26 9, doesn't get reached until sometime between the year
27 two and year three.

28
29 A Could you repeat the
30 last question please, or the statement that you made?

1 Q All right. I've referred
2 you to the chart, in question 12 and let me take you
3 to that chart. In the year one, you have a total
4 flow per day, maximum of 800 million cubic feet of gas
5 is that correct?

6 A Yes.

7 Q But you don't reach 2400
8 Million cubic feet per day until year five actually?

9 A That's correct.

10 Q Now we've been referred to
11 first year cost of service versus flow rate chart, and
12 it only refers to 2400 million cubic feet per day. I'm
13 assuming that doesn't refer to first year at all, but
14 fifth year, is that correct?

15 A Well it's a mechanism for
16 comparing various studies, yes.

17 Q All right, so if we were
18 really to find out about first year cost of service, it's
19 not even on this chart, because the coloured lines don't
20 even go back as far as 800 million cubic feet per day?

21 A Well I have two offers to
22 answer that question here on either side of me.

23 WITNESS LAZERTE:

24 A Well you're quite
25 correct. The chart shows the 2400. The designation
26 first year cost of service is a little bit of a misnomer
27 because really what is being attempted here is that all
28 the capital is spent to put the equipment into flow the
29 2400, so this chart does not show the cost of service for
30 800 million a day, you're quite correct.

1 Q And it really only shows
2 us something after the first year, if I read the line
3 correctly, the coloured lines, starts somewhere after
4 1,000 million cubic feet.

5 A That's correct.
6 really designed to show us the costing in the fifth
7 year.

Q And it is?

8 A Right, or the year that
9 you reach your full volume build up shown along the
10 bottom?

11 That's correct.

12 MR. BAYLY: All right, those
13 are all the questions I have.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Anthony
15 isn't with us today. Mr. Scott?

16 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT:

17 Q Mr. Mirosh, turning to
18 question 3, which is on page one, I understand that you
19 emphasize there that in contrast to C.A.G.P.L. that
20 Foothills Pipeline will operate above 32 degrees faren-
21 heit, south of Fort Simpson and is it correct to infer
22 from this that the lateral that will take gas to
23 Yellowknife will remain above 32 degrees farenheit for
24 its length?

25 WITNESS MIROSH.

26 A I believe it will probably
27 approach ground temperature but perhaps one of the other
28 gentlemen on the panel know the details.

29 WITNESS LAZERTE

30 A I'm afraid not, I think your

1 . assumption of ground temperature is valid.

2 No studies were prepared on it.

3 Q Well the difficulty that
4 confronts me is that I take it that the as you Mr.
5 Mirosh I think have explained, the cut off of chilling
6 at Fort Simpson was selected because you concluded that
7 below that, the advantages of chilling began to dis-
8 appear or had substantially disappeared.

9 A We felt that there would
10 be less disruption to the right of way, yes.

11 Q And I take it that the
12 as
13 reason you chilled as far /south as Fort Simpson was
14 that conversely you thought the disruption would be
15 less north of Fort Simpson if you chilled in that area?

16 A That's correct.
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q I take it then that --
2 has any consideration been given as to whether you
3 should chill to Yellowknife or not?

4 A No sir, although I
5 believe in our flow studies we have the temperatures
6 that we would project would occur along the lines. I'm
7 not sure if we have them here.

8 Q Because it's correct to
9 say, is it not, that after it comes off the main line,
10 the gas on the way to Foothills goes -- I'm sorry to
11 Yellowknife, there is not yet a town called Foothills,
12 but the gas that goes off to Yellowknife, goes a very
13 substantial distance north. One only has to look at the
14 map that you have behind you on the left, as I face it,
15 to see that, isn't that so?

16 A Yes, that's so, and quite
17 a bit of that is in rock.

18 Q Well has anything what-
19 ever been done to determine the virtues of chilling that
20 spur line?

21 A Well we didn't feel that
22 a small diameter pipeline would warrant the attention
23 that the main line did, but to be specific, we did not
24 study the necessity for placing a chiller on the commu-
25 nity laterals.

26 Q Has any consideration
27 been given to the effect of -- the temperature effects
28 of the unchilled gas, as it leaves Fort Simpson depot
29 and goes to Yellowknife?

30 A In what sense would you

1 say consideration?

2 Q Well for example, to what
3 extent is it going to be chilled naturally?

4 A Yes, that certainly
5 spills out of the hydraulic studies. There is a
6 Joule-Thompson effect along the pipeline which causes
7 temperatures to drop.

8 Q And is that the same as
9 saying that if the pressure drops, the temperature drops?

10 A Yes, as the gas expands.

11 Q Well, has anything been
12 done to determine when this system is in operation, when
13 or at what times of the year the gas in the spur line
14 is going to be below 32 or above 32?

15 A Well I believe in our
16 hydraulics studies, I may be incorrect but I believe
17 that the hydraulics studies do in fact show what the
18 temperature profile will be at various points.

19 Q And can you make that
20 available?

21 A Well they have been done,
22 I understand. If counsel feels that it can be made
23 available, then --

24 MR. GIBBS: Well again subject
25 to the same qualification of privilege, and I don't see
26 how there can be any, we will make them available, yes.

27 MR. SCOTT:

28 Q Well let me ask you just
29 one other general question, Mr. Mirosh, not you Mr.
30 Gibbs. If there is little or no impact from having no

1 artificially chilled gas at Yellowknife, does that lead
2 to a conclusion that there may be certain virtues in
3 terminating the chilling further north than Fort Simpson
4 on the main line?

5 A Well I might make one
6 point, and that is that the energy contained in the gas
7 going to the communities is extremely small compared to
8 the main line, so that disruptive effects to the
9 environment should not be significant. To answer your
10 question about whether there is any virtue of cutting
11 off chilling further north, there might be and perhaps
12 this would be a design refinement that we would be look-
13 ing at.

14 On the other hand, it might
15 also be necessary to carry chilling further south. Our
16 current assessment is that Fort Simpson is the place
17 we would cut it off.

18 Q And I take it that your
19 determination to leave it unartificially chilled to
20 Yellowknife, has no bearing on where you start and stop
21 chilling on the main line, in your judgment?

22 A Well as I say, the amount
23 of heat energy in the gas is extremely small, it's a
24 small volume, low velocity, small pipeline.

25 Q Well that's a statement
26 of fact. What conclusion do you draw from that?

27 A Well the conclusion is
28 that there is not a significant amount of energy in the
29 gas to cause disruption to the environment, as compared
30 to the main line.

1 MR. SCOTT: That's all, thank
2 you.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Any re-
4 examination?

5 MR. GIBBS: No sir.

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you,
7 gentlemen. I think that at least so far as your engage-
8 ment on this panel is concerned, we have completed your
9 evidence and thank you all very, very much.

10
11 (WITNESSES ASIDE)

12
13 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
14 as to our time table for this evening, I would like to
15 have a short meeting of half an hour with counsel, and
16 I can have that either at the dinner break, if it's
17 elongated by half an hour, or at the end of this eve-
18 ning's sitting. That presents two possibilities. If
19 it conveniences Mr. Gibbs, we could adjourn now until
20 7 or 7:30, and have our counsel meeting and then have
21 dinner, or we could continue for three-quarters of an
22 hour and break off a little early perhaps this evening.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Well you
24 gentlemen decide.

25 MR. GIBBS: Well my convenience
26 would be to adjourn now. One of my witnesses is on an
27 airplane between here and Calgary.

28 MR. SCOTT: All right.

29 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, we
30 will adjourn now until 7:30, and Miss Hutchinson, would

1 you see if they could bring us coffee tonight around
2 8:30 or thereabouts?

3
4
5 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

347
M835
Vol. 61

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:

Vol. 61 15 Sept. 1975

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF APPLICATIONS BY EACH OF
(a) CANADIAN ARCTIC GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A
RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS
CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON TERRITORY AND
THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES; and
(b) FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD. FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY
THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS
WITHIN THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES,
FOR THE PURPOSE OF A PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINES

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.
September 15th, 1975

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

Volume 61 - A

347
M1835
Vol. 61-A

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

SEP 23 1975

LIBRARY

REPORT OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE

IN RESPONSE TO A RESOLUTION OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS
PASSED ON THE 11TH MARCH 1891
RELATIVE TO THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE
CROWN IN THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF MIDDLESEX
AND THE CITY OF LONDON
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF WESTMINSTER
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF SURREY
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF KENT
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF ESSEX
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF HERTFORDSHIRE
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF BEDFORDSHIRE
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF HUNTERS

IN RESPONSE TO A RESOLUTION OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS
PASSED ON THE 11TH MARCH 1891
RELATIVE TO THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE
CROWN IN THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF MIDDLESEX
AND THE CITY OF LONDON
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF WESTMINSTER
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF SURREY
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF KENT
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF ESSEX
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF HERTFORDSHIRE
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF BEDFORDSHIRE
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF HUNTERS

REPORT OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE

REPORT OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE
IN RESPONSE TO A RESOLUTION OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS
PASSED ON THE 11TH MARCH 1891
RELATIVE TO THE LANDS BELONGING TO THE
CROWN IN THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF MIDDLESEX
AND THE CITY OF LONDON
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF WESTMINSTER
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF SURREY
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF KENT
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF ESSEX
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF HERTFORDSHIRE
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF BEDFORDSHIRE
AND THE DISTRICT OF THE
COUNTY OF HUNTERS

REPORT OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE

REPORT OF THE COMMISSIONER OF THE GENERAL LAND OFFICE

APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,
Mr. Alick Ryder and
Mr. Ian Roland for Mackenzie Valley
Pipeline Inquiry;

Mr. Jack Marshall,
Mr. Darryl Carter, and
Mr. John Steeves for Canadian Arctic Gas
Pipeline Limited;

Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.
Mr. Alan Hollingworth for Foothills Pipelines
Ltd.;

Mr. Russell Anthony,
Prof, Alastair Lucas for Canadian Arctic
Resources Committee;

Mr. Glen W. Bell and
Mr. Gerry Sutton for Northwest Territories
Indian Brotherhood and
Metis Association of the
Northwest Territories;

Mr. John Bayly for Inuit Tapirisat of
Canada and the
committee for Original
Peoples Entitlement;

Mr. Ron Veale and
Mr. Allen Lueck for the council for the
Yukon Indians

Mr. Carson H. Templeton for Environment Protect-
ion Board;

Mr. David Reesor for Northwest Territories
Association of Muni-
cipalities

Mr. Murray Sigler for Northwest Territories
Chamber of Commerce

347
M83
Vol. 61-1

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

SEP 23 1975

LIBRARY

I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD.:

E. A. Mirosh,
A.F. Bauer
G.W. Walker
P.G. Glockner

In Chief
Cross by Marshall

8700
8749

EXHIBITS:

239	Allowable Spans for Elastic Deflections	8736
240	Frost Heave Loading Configuration	8741
241	Allowable Deflections Due to Frost	8743
	Heave- Maximum Allowable Deflection	
	Span Ratio	
242	Allowable Deflection Due to Frost Heave	8743
	Frost Heave to Allowable Span Ratio	
243	Settlement Loading Configuration	8747
244	Allowable Deflections Due to Soil	8747
	Settlement	

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker,
Glockner
In Chief

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

E.A. Mirosh resumed
A.F. Bauer Sworn
G.W. Walker "
P.G. Glockner "

MR. GIBBS: The fifth panel deals with pipeline design, composed of Mirosh, Bauer, Walker and Glockner.

On Mr. Mirosh's right is Dr. Glockner, on his left Mr. Walker and Mr. Bauer.

Q Mr. Mirosh, you're the manager of engineering for Foothills Pipeline Limited?

MR. MIROSH:

A Yes.

Q You've appeared before this inquiry as a member of other panels in this phase?

A Yes.

Q Can you outline the major differences between Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline and Foothills' applications in the area of pipeline design?

A There are a few differences in this particular aspect of engineering for this project. One significant difference is that CAGPL has proposed to design and construct dual river crossings on the two pipeline crossings of the Mackenzie River.

In the Foothills case, we propose single pipeline crossings at these two locations. We feel that being selective in the choice of crossing locations and with substantial engineering precautions and suitable installation methods, a single crossing at these two locations would not only be as effective but will in addition reduce river bank and river bed

1 disturbances. Mr. Walker, a member of this panel, will
2 expand upon this further.

3 A second difference in this area
4 is that Foothills proposes a 60 foot wide permanent
5 right-of-way for the mainline and a 60 foot wide work-
6 ing space alongside of the right-of-way which would be
7 utilized only during construction. In the case of CAGPL,
8 they are proposing a 120 foot wide right-of-way for the
9 entire mainline.

10 A third area of difference is
11 that CAGPL in its application is proposing intermediate
12 pipeline block valves and Foothills is proposing not to
13 install such valves at locations intermediate to stations.

14 In the case of stresses within
15 the pipeline, as a result of the reduced operating press-
16 ure which Foothills proposes, total stress levels will
17 differ between the two proposals and Dr. Glockner, a
18 member of this panel, will expand upon Foothills approach
19 towards stress calculations.

20 Q In general terms, can you
21 explain the approach Foothills is taking towards guarding
22 against excessive pipe movements due to frost heave and
23 thaw settlement?

24 A We are aware and concerned
25 that pipe movement after construction due to both frost
26 heave and thaw settlement will be maintained within safe
27 stress levels for the pipe which we are proposing to use.
28 With this concern in mind, we have initiated studies by
29 our consultants in the areas of geothermal analysis and
30 pipe stress analysis.

Mirosh, B auer, Walker, GLockner
In Chief

1 Frost heave is of concern only
2 to those parts of the pipeline which are in non-perma-
3 frost areas in the discontinuous permafrost zone and
4 where chilled gas is travelling through the pipe. More
5 specifically, frost heave will only occur at locations
6 where fine grained soil with a high water table or
7 subsurface source of water exists. To examine this
8 site specific phenomenon, we are mathematically modelling
9 the pipe together with its surrounding soil and ditch
10 fill materials. Subsurface soil information is currently
11 being obtained from drill hole data which has been made
12 available by the Alberta Gas Trunk Line and from other
13 sources where the drill hole data is taken from locat-
14 ions near our proposed pipeline route.

15 With this tool of mathematical
16 modelling, we are generating sufficient information so
17 that a series of graphical representations can be made
18 relating anticipated pipe movements due to frost with
19 length of pipe affected (soil conditions and time being
20 the parameters).

21 At the same time, our pipe
22 stress analysis studies are relating maximum allowable
23 pipe displacements to unit length of pipe. Utilizing
24 both of these sets of information, we will be able to
25 determine how much pipe movement over a certain length
26 is tolerable and how much movement will cause stresses
27 to which safe levels are exceeded. If we find in some
28 instances that pipe movements exceed those which we can
29 tolerate, then we will implement any one of the follow-
30 ing design steps which would limit pipe movement due to

frost heave:

Number 1, replacement of ice rich fine-grained material in the ditch with granular material;

(2) Water drainage from the ditch;

(3) Insulation around the pipeline;

(4) Deeper burial or additional overburden;

(5) Pipe restraining saddles with frost anchors.

The potential problem of thaw settlement will occur in those areas south of Fort Simpson where the warm pipeline passes through fine grained ice rich permafrost soil. Again, as in the case of frost heave, geothermal studies and pipe stress calculations are being carried out to determine the allowable amount of thaw settlement which can occur over a unit length and still not exceed safe pipeline stress levels. We are using drill hole data which Foothills has collected during a program carried out last winter. Should specific areas of concern regarding pipe support become evident during the studies, designs based upon the installation of special pipe support structures could be implemented. These supports, if they are required, would be below the pipeline and would support the pipe in its ditch.

In the detailed design phase, the site specific locations of anticipated frost heave

1 and thaw settlement problems will be drilled to obtain
2 site specific soil and moisture data. These locations
3 will be noted on the drawings and field engineers, who
4 will be on hand during construction, will be aware of
5 these locations as the ditch is being opened. The field
6 engineer at the time of construction will be able to
7 confirm that site specific support designs will be re-
8 quired and the predesigned pipe support installations
9 will be implemented to the extent indicated during
10 construction.

11 Q In the Foothills' applicat-
12 ion, compressor stations are spaced approximately every
13 50 miles and mainline block valves will exist at the
14 stations. Can you explain why block valves intermediate
15 to the station locations are not included in the
16 Foothills design?

17 A We have investigated the
18 installation of block valves at locations intermediate
19 to compressor stations and have concluded that such
20 block valves are not necessary for the safe and reliable
21 operation of the pipeline. Block valves at intermediate
22 locations are generally installed to limit the amount
23 of gas which would be lost from the pipeline in the
24 event of a pipeline rupture at locations between the
25 stations. Intermediate block valves, by means of a
26 differential sensing device, can be adjusted to auto-
27 matically close should the sensing device detect a
28 differential pressure across the valve indicating a line
29 break at some location in that line section.

30 As the pipeline in the

1 Northwest Territories is installed in an isolated environ-
2 ment over its entire length, pipeline damage due to third
3 party causes can be expected to be minimal. On the
4 other hand, third party damage in pipelines throughout
5 southern Canada and the U.S. is the major cause of
6 pipeline rupture.

In addition, by specifying the

The above factors, coupled with

Q Can you advise of any plan

A Our studies to date have

1. Above ground pipeline at

2. Pipeline scraper traps and

3. Valve actuators for the mainline block and side valves at station locations.

In addition and although not within the scope of this panel, we are currently planning to install some piping and associated components above ground level at stations. The panel which will appear before this inquiry in the near future on the subject of station design will be available for further discussion in this area.

Several techniques which will be considered during the detail design phase will allow us to maintain design conditions during extreme ambient temperatures on above ground components. The design techniques will include the following:

1. Design for reduced pressure to give a stress level of less than 8,000 PSI when equipment or piping does not contain a flowing fluid to provide heat, blowdown condition.

2. Design for the minimum metal temperatures to be expected under the worst recorded atmospheric conditions in accordance with CSA Code Z-184-1973, paragraph 3.1.2.3 There are no recorded ambient temperatures lower than minus 75 degrees Fahrenheit in the vicinity of the proposed pipeline route.

3. Design for the minimum gas temperatures in areas such as blowdown systems where these are below the expected ambient temperatures.

At the locations where community lateral piping will be carried above ground on bridges, the piping will be suitably insulated to control hydrate

1 formation and will be designed in accordance with
2 CSA Z-184-1973, paragraph 3.1.2.3b. The piping will be
3 hung from bridge structural elements and supported on
4 standard pipe hanger components. Precautions will be
5 taken in designing the approaches to prevent thermal
6 expansion and contraction from causing excessive stresses
7 within the piping.

8 At scraper traps, the piping
9 components which will be above ground would include a por-
10 tion of the S-bend and all the reducers, scraper barrels,
11 closer, kicker line, and drip leg connections and vents
12 No primary form of insulation or method of heating is
13 proposed for the above ground components as the require-
14 ment for retaining heat is not necessary. The components
15 will be coated with paint restricting any atmospheric
16 corrosion and temporary localized heating may be provided
17 by space heaters if and when the need arises. Scraper
18 traps and associated pipeline components downstream of
19 the trap valve will be maintained at pressures below
20 200 PSIG when not in operation. In addition, the scraper
21 trap will not be allowed to operate or to be exposed to
22 pipeline pressure at ambient temperatures below minus
23 50 degrees Fahrenheit.

24 The actuators for the large
25 mainline valves will be sheltered in unheated buildings
26 to prevent exposure to wind and blowing snow which could
27 be detrimental to reliable operations. The actuators
28 will be specified for ambient temperature operation which
29 could be as low as minus 75 degrees Fahrenheit. In the
30 event that difficulties are encountered with actuator

1 operations at extremely low ambient temperatures. then
2 small infrared heaters may be installed within the
3 buildings to apply concentrated heat to the actuator
4 bodies.

5 Aside from the above ground
6 piping and components mentioned in the preceeding para-
7 graphs, it is our conviction that gas pipeline systems
8 have historically been placed below grade and that the
9 design of pipeline systems in such a manner is
10 consistent with good operating integrity and the least
11 environmental impact. Foothills recognizes that the
12 design of a pipeline which will carry refrigerated gas
13 through permafrost will be different from previous
14 conventional pipeline experience. On the other hand, we do
15 feel that with the aid of geothermal models and site
16 specific soil data, we can adequately understand the freeze
17 and thaw phenonoma associated with permafrost. Suitable
18 pipeline support design techniques will be applied to
19 site specific situations which call for these techniques.

20 Although we do not foresee the
21 installation of above ground piping where the pipeline
22 runs overland. we are not discounting the possibility of
23 installing overhead river crossings at specific locations
24 where this is indicated to be preferable during the
25 detailed design studies. It may be that we will propose
26 one or two such overhead crossings where these might be
27 desirable from an environmental point of view. At the
28 present time, however, we do not foresee such a require-
29 ment.

30 Q Mr. Bauer you are the

1 Supervisor of Construction and Planning for Foothills
2 Pipe Lines?

3 WITNESS BAUER:

4 A Yes.

5 Q Does the sheet attached to
6 the prepared evidence and having your name at the top,
7 accurately describe your academic qualifications and
8 experience?

9 A Yes.

10 Q Would you read that into
11 the record please?

12 A Education, Technische
13 Hochschule University of Vienna, Austria, 1948,
14 Mechanical Engineering, State Diploma.

15 Experience, Twenty-eight years
16 of world-wide experience in hydro electric, oil and gas
17 pipeline engineering, construction, management and
18 consulting.

19 Austrian Federal Railways,
20 Hydroelectric Division, Villach and Innsbruck, Austria.
21 Engineer on Planning, Economics. Design and Construction
22 of Hydroelectric Projects.

23 B.C. International Engineering
24 Co. Ltd., Vancouver, B.C. Canada. Alcan Project,
25 Kemano, B.C. Canada. Chief Mechanical Inspector on
26 Power plant and transmission line construction.

27 Goliad Oil and Gas Co. Ltd.
28 Calgary, Pembina Field Project, Alberta. Project
29 Engineer, responsible for engineering and construction of
30 gas gathering pipelines and facilities.

Williams Brothers, Tulsa,

Oklahoma, U.S.A. Shell Oil of Venezuela, Punta Gorda Project, Venezuela. Supervising Project Engineer. on oil pipelines, pumping stations, tank farms and deep sea loading facilities.

Sverdrup and Parcel Inc., St. Louis, Missouri U.S.A. Consultants to the Royal Irrigation Department. Bangkok, Thailand on the Phumiphol Hydro Electric Project. Tak, Thailand. Consultant responsible for all phases of mechanical installations.

Engaged by Bechtel Corporation, San Francisco, California, U.S.A. and affiliated companies. over the period 1955 to 1967 on the following:

a) Trans Mountain Oil Pipeline Co. Ltd. B.C. and Alberta. Canada. Resident engineer on design and construction of pumping stations and pipeline looping.

b) Iran-Pan American Oil Company, Tehran Kharg Island, Iran. Resident Manager. responsible for direction of engineering and construction activities on oil processing plants, pipelines and loading facilities.

c) Burghausen-Pipelines Project (Transalpine Pipelines) Munich, Germany. Consultant, responsible for the acquisition of operating certificates. Director responsible for all phases of the project.

d) Savage River Mines Inc., Sidney, Melbourne, Tasmania Project Site, Australia and San Francisco, U.S.A. Chief Project Co-ordinator, responsible for direction of all phases of engineering, construction and initial operation of plant, loading and

1 first solids (Slurry) Pipeline facilities.

2 Joined Foothills in November,
3 1974.

4 Professional Association,
5 Member of the Engineering Institute of Canada.
6 Member of the Canadian Society for Mechanical Engineering.

7 Q What type of problems were
8 you faced with in designing the pipeline for Arctic
9 conditions, Mr. Bauer?

10 A The basic approach to design
11 taken by Foothills Pipe Lines has been to employ conven-
12 tional pipeline design and construction techniques where-
13 ever conditions permit. Where conventional procedures were
14 not suitable due to environmental or other site specific
15 constraints, modifications to the conventional procedures
16 were made, to overcome the constraints and still achieve
17 the required quality. In all cases, the CSA Standard
18 Z-184 will be complied with as a minimum and where special
19 problems or unusual conditions are encountered, the
20 special designs and procedures that have been developed
21 are over and above the minimum code requirements.

22 Our fundamental design
23 approach was first to define the major special problems
24 of the north and then to develop a criteria for handling
25 these problems and the design to set limits or values
26 acceptable for the design criteria.

27 Two primary problems, those of
28 permafrost and extreme cold, and one resulting problem
29 of the effects of frost heave due to operation of the
30 chilled gas pipeline required particular attention.

1 Early in the study of these
2 particular problems it became evident that Arctic
3 conditions, when left undisturbed are generally very
4 stable and if this regime could be retained by appropriate
5 pipeline design, the problems during and after con-
6 struction would be minimized. Thus, our approach in
7 setting our design criteria was to achieve a pipeline
8 system designed to result to as close to undisturbed
9 conditions as was practical and to still ensure that
10 the operating system would be secure and functional.
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 Q Can you give an example
2 of how you applied the approach?

3 A While the extreme cold of
4 the Arctic has a major effect on anything exposed to
5 ambient conditions, the effect of those ambient temper-
6 atures on a buried pipeline only causes minor differences
7 when compared to a buried pipeline under southern ambient
8 conditions. Arctic winter conditions tend to stabilize
9 the permafrost ground regime which the pipeline is in.
10 The swing into the summer season changes the permafrost
11 ground regime in the active layer and the creation of
12 this sometimes unstable active layer places restraints
13 on the pipeline design, procedures and schedules.

14 One of the principal means of
15 obtaining a secure pipeline is to develop a ditch design
16 that will provide continuous support for the pipeline
17 and a suitable protective cover over the line. To
18 accomplish this, we paid particular attention to ditch
19 design and established the construction procedure of
20 pre-engineering the pipe into the ground. To meet the
21 specific problem of the trench filling with blowing
22 snow, we must minimize the time of open ditch exposure.
23 This is accomplished by altering the conventional pro-
24 cedure of opening the ditch and then bending the pipe
25 to conform to the ditch. Rather, we would establish the
26 ditch bottom contour and provide it to the pipe bending
27 crews so that the pipe configuration can be established
28 ahead of the ditching operation. The pipe will thus
29 conform to the finished ditch when it is completed later.
30 Following established construction practices, the ditch

1 excavation, bedding, padding and backfill requirements
2 would be completed to the specifications required for the
3 area. This will be accomplished through applying known
4 data or assumed data on ground conditions, subject to
5 further confirmation during final design of geotechnical
6 analysis and then predicting the soil behaviour.

7 The specific design of the ditch
8 configuration will include consideration of extra depth
9 ditch that may be required to ensure that frozen condit-
10 ions exist at pipe depths in areas that might be suscept-
11 ible to ditch flooding during the summer time in the
12 pre-operational phase of the pipeline.

13 Q You have mentioned bedding,
14 padding and backfill; can you explain their uses,
15 please?

16 A The specifications for
17 ditch configuration and backfill requirements will
18 include consideration for the need to support the pipe
19 to overcome vertical, longitudinal and lateral movements
20 that could occur along the line and particularly at
21 bends.

22 A preliminary analysis of the
23 native materials expected to be excavated from the
24 trench will be determined during the design phase and,
25 subject to confirmation during installation, will be
26 used to establish the extent of select bedding, padding
27 and select backfill materials required.

28 Bedding is required to assure
29 continuous longitudinal support of the pipe where the
30 ditch bottom is irregular in shape and to prevent damage

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 to the pipe coating through contact with bedrock, frozen
2 soil, cobbles or other hard materials. Where the ditch
3 is in unfrozen soils, and has a smooth bottom and where
4 no cobbles or rocks exist, a bedding layer will not be
5 required. When bedding is required, then it will be
6 obtained from borrow sources.

7 Prior to laying the pipe, the
8 natural soil or the bedding will be contoured to the
9 radius of the pipe to produce a minimum 30 degree bed-
10 ding angle. Where a bedding layer is required, it will
11 be a fine granular material and will be compacted.

12 Paddding is generally obtained
13 from select excavated material or from borrow material
14 for the purpose of providing a protective layer around
15 the pipe. Padding will be compacted to eliminate large
16 voids and additional compaction of padding will be re-
17 quired at the following locations: sidebends, overbends,
18 below ground to above ground transitions and block valves.
19 The function of the padding for each of these is as
20 follows:

21 (a) Sidebends: Padding acts
22 as a uniform bearing surface to transfer the pipe load-
23 ing to the surrounding soil and minimizes movement of
24 the pipe due to pressure and temperature.

25 (b) Overbends: padding acts
26 as a uniform bearing surface to transfer the pipe load-
27 ing to the overburden material and minimizes movement
28 of the pipe due to pressure and temperature.

29 (c) Below ground to above-
30 ground transitions: Padding provides additional

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 frictional resistance to pipe movement due to temperature
2 in the longitudinal direction.

3 (d) Block Valves; padding
4 provides complete support of the pipe on each side of
5 the block valve to minimize the transfer of stresses
6 from the pipeline to the valve body.

7 The backfill material will pro-
8 vide protection to the pipe, restore the ground surface
9 and act as an overburden load for pipe restraint in
10 both longitudinal and vertical directions. Backfill will
11 normally be obtained from the excavated material. If
12 the native excavated material is unsuitable with respect
13 to stability, consolidation or erosion control, then
14 borrow material will be used for select backfill.

15 Q What is your approach
16 towards handling potential frost heave areas?

17 A The problem of frost heave
18 that could occur where the chilled gas pipeline would
19 go through areas of unfrozen soil, required consideration
20 in ditch design configuration. While the question of
21 frost heave and its control will principally be handled
22 by the geotechnical witnesses, some comment of its effect
23 on ditch configuration design will be made here. Again
24 Foothills adheres to common practice and procedures as
25 far as possible. Based on preliminary geotechnical
26 assessments, with confirmed data to be obtained before
27 final design, ditch specifications would be developed
28 to meet the various requirements for frost heave con-
29 trol. These would provide for excavating extra depth
30 ditch, removing the frost susceptible material and

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

replacing it with select material.

In summary, a ditch specification would be established for the various conditions of permafrost, potential frost heave and normal soil. The ditch specification would, of course, also reflect considerable input relative to cross drainage requirements, erosion control, revegetation, replacement of top soils, permit crossing requirements and slope stabilization, both across and along the pipeline, to the extent determined necessary in the final design.

Q Mr. Walker, you are the president of Canuck Engineering of Calgary, Alberta?

WITNESS WALKER:

A Yes.

Q Does the sheet attached to the prepared evidence and having your name at the top, accurately describe your academic qualifications and experience?

A It does.

Q Would you read the contents of that sheet, please?

A Education, Bachelor of Science Degree in Civil Engineering, University of Alberta, 1949, Edmonton, Alberta; Banff School of Advanced Management 1964.

Experience: 26 years experience in oil and natural gas pipeline engineering, operations, construction and management.

1949-1953: Interprovincial Pipe Lines Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta. Engineer on economics, planning, hydraulics and pipeline and pump station

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

design, construction and operation of Canada's largest oil pipeline.

1953-1961: Mannix Company Limited, Calgary, Alberta. Manager, Pipeline Division of one of Canada's largest contracting companies, responsible for pipeline and petroleum engineering and construction.

1961-1971: Alberta Gas Trunk Line Company Limited, Calgary, Alberta. Vice-President, Engineering, and Vice-President, Operations, in charge of company's total engineering and operations.

1971-1974: Canadian Arctic Gas Study Group Limited, Calgary, Alberta. Director of Engineering, responsible for all phases of engineering and initial environmental studies for Arctic Gas pipeline project development.

1974-Present: Canuck Engineering Limited, Calgary, Alberta. President, responsible for direction of engineering and construction departments.

Professional associations, past and present: President of the Pipeline Contractors' Association of Canada; Member of the Canadian Petroleum Association, Pipeline Committee; Chairman of the Canadian Gas Association Transmission Committee and Member of the Board of Directors; Vice-Chairman and member of the International Gas Union Transmission Committee; Registered Professional Engineer in Alberta.

Q And Mr. Walker, it's in connection with the International Gas Union Transmission

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 Committee that you have some familiarity with Russian
2 operating procedures?

3 A Yes, I have some.

4 Q And have seen those in
5 Russia?

6 A That is correct.

7 Q Mr. Walker, what factors
8 have you considered in your river crossing designs?
9 Which of these are principal factors and how have you
10 applied those factors to the river crossing design?

11 A River crossing design
12 incorporates data and information provided by several
13 engineering sciences such as hydrological and hydraulic
14 studies that will give information on river bed degra-
15 dation, potential bed scour, course stability, icing
16 effects, seasonal floods, surface and sub-surface drain-
17 age and any effects storms could have on the water
18 levels. Geotechnical and surficial geology expertise
19 will also be used to provide data on river valley and
20 stream bed soil characteristics, bank stability and
21 potential for erosion and extent of permafrost and/or
22 frost bulb growth effects. Other engineering disciplines,
23 including metallurgy, stress analysis, corrosion pro-
24 tection, environmental assessments, mechanical and civil
25 engineering, pertaining to weighting, construction
26 techniques, excavation, trench back-filling and bank
27 restoration and stabilization will be utilized to com-
28 plete the designs.-

29 The principal factors will
30 include the predicted hydraulic performance of the river

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
IN Chief

1 and the geotechnical assessments of the stability of the
2 river banks and stream bed characteristics. All of
3 these factors have been taken into account in the river
4 crossing designs by obtaining, at this state of the pro-
5 ject development, preliminary assessments from experts
6 in these fields and applying this information to develop
7 a "river channel envelope" that would include all areas
8 of potential stream bed changes and river bank instab-
9 ility. The pipe location was then established an addi-
10 tional distance beyond the outer limits of the river
11 channel envelope of potential stream channel change or
12 disturbance. In some cases where bank instability could
13 ^{not} be controlled, alternative designs to control the bank
14 movements will be included and the envelope of disturb-
15 ance reduced accordingly.

16 Having established a secure
17 location for the pipeline outside of any area of poten-
18 tial disturbance due to shifts in the river or its
19 banks, engineering calculations were performed to achieve
20 a pipe configuration within allowable stress levels and
21 weighted to provide a selected negative buoyancy for
22 the specific river crossing.

23 Q How do you know that this
24 will work and can you outline the construction proced-
25 ures to achieve such crossing designs?

26 A The designs completed to
27 date are based on initial data on the river behaviour,
28 sub-surface and bank conditions. Before final designs
29 are completed, extensive field investigations and further
30 studies will be made to determine the hydraulic behaviour

1 and geotechnical conditions as confirmed data, and this
2 will be used in the final pipeline crossing designs.
3 With confirmation that the location of the pipe in the
4 river crossing will be in stable ground and will not be
5 disturbed over the forecasted life of the project, and
6 by developing designs well within the code requirements
7 for the Arctic, we can be sure of the security and stab-
8 ility of the pipeline crossing.

The Fort Simpson crossing of the Mackenzie River where the channel contains substantial cobbles and boulders will probably require a combination of dredging and dragline operations, working from a barge in the summer and using a graded or gravel fill pad and then following similar procedures as outlined for the East

Channel crossing.

Smaller river crossings will generally be constructed in the winter time working through the ice with the trench excavated by backhoe or dragline and the excavated material bulldozed away from the active channel area and stored on sections of the ice where the ice is either fast or close to resting on the bottom. The pipe for these crossings in general will be layed across the ice, weighted (if not pre-concrete coated) and lowered into the trench by use of side booms. The back-fill material will then be broken up and dozed back into the river trench.

Q Would you explain your design rationale for selection of single rather than dual river crossings?

A The Applicant has based its design on selection of the most economical pipeline system that meets the necessary criteria for security and continuity of service consistent with acceptable minimum environmental, sociological and other judged impacts. Hence the benefits including security and future use of a more expensive dual pipeline crossing had to be measured against its increased cost before a dual river crossing design would be adopted. Based on the forecasted future use and initial crossing data available, our assessments did not justify the increased cost of dual crossings at this time.

The approach by Foothills Pipe Lines Limited on the river crossing design was to accept only a crossing design that would be assessed

1 as secure. If any assessments challenged the security
2 of the crossing design, the crossing design was revised,
3 relocated or redesigned to ensure a safe crossing rather
4 than taking a dual crossing design approach for the pur-
5 pose of increasing system security. The philosophy
6 of achieving one secure pipeline river crossing was pre-
7 ferred to accepting a philosophy of potential failure in
8 river crossing designs. This approach does not, however,
9 rule out having available operations and maintenance
10 contingency plans for emergency repairs or replacements that
11 would be adopted regardless of the philosophy chosen on
12 single or dual river crossing designs.

13 MP. GIBBS: Mr. Walker, in the
14 assembly, we seem to have gotten questions 19 and 20
15 interchanged. Does 19 now fit sensibly into your
16 narrative? At this stage, that is.

17 The evidence that I
18 gave just ahead of -- there should be some comments
19 inserted just ahead of 20, on pressure testing on
20 construction procedures.

21 Q Would you then --

22 A I'll be glad to make those
23 comments now.

24 This is further to your question,
25 how do you know that this will work and how can you outline
26 the construction procedures to achieve such crossing
27 design. Further on, in response to that question;
28 pressure tests in the pipeline section, and
29 tests on the completed crossing, would be made separately
30 to ensure the integrity of the crossing. Close inspection

1 of the required depth of excavation, placement of the
2 pipe and back filling procedures would be maintained, to
3 ensure compliance with the drawings and specifications.
4 The final pigging of the crossing, with a gauging or
5 smart pig will be performed to ensure there are no
6 buckles, dents or obstructions on the final crossing.
7 Bank restoration, armouring and revegetation as
8 specified, would be completed as soon after construction
9 as seasonal conditions would permit .

10 Q Can you now comment on
11 river crossing problems of other pipelines and how will
12 the Foothills design overcome those problems?

13 A Pipelines have had a
14 relatively good record from a safety and security point
15 and considering the large number and length of service of
16 pipeline systems in Canada, there have been few failures.
17 In general, the causes for these failures were due to un-
18 predicted behaviour of the river or a failure by the
19 designer to have fully assessed the potential for the
20 behaviour of the rivers and the stability of its banks.
21 Had full utilization been made of today's state of the art
22 available to us of river engineering, geological and
23 geotechnical sciences, river crossing designs in general,
24 would, in my opinion, have placed the lines safely below
25 the areas of river bed and bank disturbance that caused
26 pipeline river crossing failures or wash-out.

27 The Foothills river crossing
28 designs will fully utilize the expertise available in
29 these fields and be based on thorough site and river
30 regime studies, so that the crossing designs will be as

1 secure as these engineering practices can make them.
2 In addition, complete utilization of site data assess-
3 ments will be made of the potential dangers due to
4 acts of man, such as barging anchoring in the channel,
5 and allowance included in the design, if necessary, to
6 protect against such a possibility.

7 Q Dr. Glockner, you are a
8 consultant with Foothills Pipe Lines Ltd.?

DR. GLOCKNER

9 A Yes.

10 Q Does the sheet attached to the
11 prepared evidence and having your name at the top
12 accurately describe your academic qualifications and
13 experience?

14 A It is an accurate short
15 condensation of parts of my curriculum vitae.
16 I would like to add some small changes in addition, if
17 they're appropriate.

18 Q All right, would you read
19 it in making the changes that you wish to make.

20 A Education, Bachelor of
21 Engineering with Honours in Applied Mechanics at
22 McGill University, 1955.

23 Master of Science in Civil
24 Engineering, Specializing in Structural Engineering,
25 at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1956.

26 PhD in Civil Engineering,
27 University of Michigan, 1964.

28 Experience, Assistant Professor,
29 University of Alberta, 1958 to 1960.

30 Assistant Professor at the

University of Calgary, 1960 to 1962.

Associate Professor at the
University of Calgary, 1962 to 1968.

Professor of Civil Engineering,
since 1968 at the University of Calgary.

Design Engineer with C.C. Parker,
Whittaker and Company Limited, Structural Consultants
in Edmonton, Alberta, 1956 to 1958.

Various consulting work
with consulting firms in Calgary, Edmonton and
Southern Alberta, from 1958 through 1975.

Professional Associations,
Past and present.

American Society for Civil
Engineers, American Concrete Institute (ACI), American
Academy of Mechanics, where I was also member of the
Board of Directors, International Association for
Shell and Spatial Structures (IASS) where I'm also
currently a member of the Executive Council from Canada.

International Association
for Bridge and Structural Engineering, for which I was
also the chairman of the Canadian group, for three years.

Member of the Canadian
Executive of the Institute of International Union of
Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

American Hungarian Literary Guild.
Society for Applied Mathematics and
Mechanics, it's written here in German, Gesellschaft fur
Angewandte Mathematik und Mechanik.

Engineering Institute of Canada.

1 Canadian Society for Mechanical
2 Engineering, I'm the chairman of the local group in
3 Calgary at the present time.

4 Canadian Society for Civil
5 Engineering, Division of Mechanics and Applied
6 Mathematics (CSME) for which I'm a member of the
7 national executive.

8 I am of course a member of
9 the Association of Professional Engineers, Geologists and
10 Geophysicists of Alberta, and a member of the Calgary
11 Faculty Association of University Teachers, as well as
12 that of the Canadian University Teachers.

13 Q Dr. Glocker what causes
14 and effects did you take into account relating to the
15 structural integrity of the pipeline?

16 A A high pressure gas trans-
17 mission pipeline is a straight or curved cylindrical
18 shell structure. As such, it is subjected to stresses
19 due to internal pressure as well as longitudinal and circum-
20 ferential stresses due to movements which the pipeline
21 will undergo. Stresses are also caused by temperature
22 and pressure changes in the pipeline.

23 Due to the Arctic conditions,
24 which are encountered along northern segments of the
25 proposed pipeline route, special care is taken in the
26 analysis to evaluate the stresses and strains in the
27 pipeline due to these various causes in an attempt to
28 predict its behaviour under the diverse conditions
29 which it will be subjected during its operational
30 lifetime.

1 Foothills is using the well es-
2 tablished principle in pipeline design and construction of
3 assuming the buried straight pipeline as being "constrained"
4 against longitudinal movement.

5 This means that the pipe , as
6 long as it is straight and buried, will not be subject
7 to any longitudinal movement, due to temperature changes
8 and various other causes. Naturally where the alignment
9 dictates a vertical or horizontal bend in the pipe, the
10 assumption of complete constraint has to be relinquished
11 and the design has to take into account the longitudinal
12 stresses produced by temperature changes, by circum-
13 ferential hoop stress as well as by the relative
14 movements of segments of the pipe.

15 The following causes have been
16 taken into account in stress analysis of the pipeline
17 structure.

18 1) Circumferential stress
19 due to internal pressure. This stress level is kept
20 below the maximum allowable hoop stress as given by the
21 Code and also as dictated by extended use criteria for
22 the type of material out of which the pipeline will be
23 constructed.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

Number 2: Longitudinal stresses
due to internal pressure.

Number 3: Longitudinal stresses due to expected maximum temperature changes. Since along many sections of the pipeline installation will occur during winter months and since the proposed operational temperature of the pipeline is, in some cases, well above the freezing point, the temperature increment which the pipeline will be subjected to from the time of installation to the time of operation, will cause severe longitudinal stresses. As long as the pipeline is straight and buried, the longitudinal stresses are of no major concern provided the stress level is kept below the allowable. In curved portions of the pipeline, temperature changes cause significant bending moments which have to be accounted for in arriving at the total longitudinal stress state.

Number 4: Bending stresses and deformations due to frost heaving. Along certain segments of the pipeline, where sufficient moisture is present in permeable soil and the operating temperature is below freezing point, geothermal calculations show that ice lenses will form and those underneath the pipe result in upward frost heave pressures on the pipeline. The upward tendency of movement of the pipe will be resisted firstly by the overburden, secondly by the shear strength of the soil which the pipe is tending to push up, and finally by the flexural rigidity of the pipeline.

Number 5: Settlement stresses.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
IN Chief

1 The pipeline may be left unsupported where the supporting
2 soil consolidates or settles due to thawing of the ice
3 in the soil. In these situations, the pipe will have to
4 span such settlement areas carrying the weight of the
5 overburden soil. The distance of the unsupported spans
6 will depend on the height and density of the material
7 above the pipe as well as the magnitude of allowable soil
8 pressure and distribution of this pressure adjacent to
9 the settlement area which is affecting the pipeline.

10 Number 6: Along sections of the
11 pipeline where vertical or horizontal bends are required,
12 temperature changes will cause movements of the pipeline
13 which will be partially resisted by the passive earth
14 pressure of the surrounding soil. The displacements in
15 such bends, the minimum permissible radii of curvatures
16 and possible additional support or anchors required, are
17 all factors which are determined by the analysis so as to
18 keep the state of stress in the pipeline within the safe,
19 permitted level.

20 Number 7: There will be cer-
21 tain sections of the pipeline along which the pipe will
22 cross muskeg so as to be surrounded at times by a
23 fluid medium. In such instances the density --

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me.
25 "So as to be surrounded at times by a fluid -- "

26 A By a fluid medium

27 THE COMMISSIONER: You mean by
28 water?

29 A Water or a mixture,
30 Mr. Commissioner, of soil and water, which has zero

1 shear strength.

2 In such instances, the density
3 of the liquid is higher than the overall average density
4 of the gas-filled pipeline and therefore upward buoyancy
5 pressures tend to lift the pipeline above the water or
6 muskeg. Analyses are performed to determine the saddle
7 weight spacing, the maximum flexural stresses due to such
8 upward pressures and the displacements accompanying these
9 stresses.

10 In addition, these areas, the
11 pipe is of course completely unconstrained and therefore
12 the differences in longitudinal stress between the con-
13 strained and unconstrained segments have to be taken
14 into account in the analysis. Temperature changes will,
15 in some cases, cause large compressor stresses in the
16 pipe which demand an overall stability analysis on the
17 floating pipeline.

18 Number 8: Additional circum-
19 ferential and longitudinal stresses due to radial as
20 well as axial temperature gradients are also taken into
21 account in the design.

22 Q How much horizontal and
23 vertical movement can the pipe tolerate, based on your
24 calculations, and how reliable is the data?

25 A Corresponding to the
26 class location of the proposed pipeline route, the
27 C.S.A. specification Z 184-1973 allows a maximum move
28 stress of 80 percent of the specified minimum yield
29 strength, S.M.Y.S. The pipeline operation pressure is
30 set at 1,250 PSIG which corresponds to a stress level

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 of 69 percent of S.M.Y.S. The expected maximum temper-
2 ature changes estimated on the basis of possible minimum
3 insulation temperatures and proposed operating temper-
4 atures will produce axial stresses. Longitudinal stresses
5 will also be present due to the hoop stress.

6 Bending of the pipe, whether
7 it is in the vertical or lateral direction, produces
8 longitudinal flexural stresses. The sum of these longi-
9 tudinal stresses also has to be kept below a certain
10 level. In addition to these stress and failure limit-
11 ations, the designer needs to concern himself with over-
12 all stability and local buckling and wrinkling of the
13 pipe.

14 Tests and theoretical calculations indi-
15 cate that longitudinal strain levels of the order of 1
16 percent are usually present when local wrinkling or
17 buckling occurs in pipes which have diameter to thickness
18 ratios of the same order of magnitude as that of the
19 pipe to be used in the proposed pipeline. For this
20 reason, maximum strain levels are kept well below this 1
21 percent figure; in fact maximum strain levels are
22 established at half a percent. It is important to note
23 that half a percent strain is also the specified yield
24 strain for the material of the pipeline, therefore as
25 long as strains are kept below one half percent, the
26 material behaviour will be approximately linear.

27 In view of all these restrict-
28 ions and constraints, calculations have been performed
29 on segments of pipeline treating them as slender, straight
30 or curved beams and/or beam-columns and subjected to
31 various distributed loading conditions in accordance with

1 the above described causes. Naturally, the magnitude
2 of permissible displacement depends on the length of the
3 pipe involved. The longer the pipe segment which under-
4 goes bending, the larger the displacement which can be
5 tolerated.

6 Mr. Commissioner, although I
7 call for a slide just a few lines further down, it might
8 be helpful if we were to put the first slide on here
9 now. Perhaps we can just look at that for a minute, and
10 I think it is better if I go up to the slide.

11 Well what we are trying to
12 indicate on this slide, sir, is deflection with allowable
13 span, keeping in mind what I just read into the record
14 a few minutes ago, that we are keeping deflections
15 within allowable limits. By that, we mean that the
16 bending associated with these deflections
17 will have to be kept within these allowable limits. On
18 the ordinate here we see deflection "C" and is the allow-
19 able span.

20
21 We have shown here the deflect-
22 ion versus the span for a simple structure such as this,
23 which actually models a piece of a pipeline, if you
24 think in terms of a long pipeline which is twice as long
25 as this piece here and if you were to force a displace-
26 ment laterally or vertically on the pipe of an amount
27 Delta which we designated as deflection, then the de-
28 flection corresponding to a bending moment produced
29 in a total length of so many feet is given on this
30 graph and is given by this red curve here sir.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

For example, on a 200 foot span, we can tolerate roughly a deflection of two feet.

THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you.

MR. GIBBS: Perhaps while we are having the lights up, sir, we might mark the photographs of that slide as exhibit 239.

THE COMMISSIONER: Certainly.

(PHOTOGRAPHS OF SLIDE MARKED AS EXHIBIT
NUMBER 239)

MR. GIBBS:

Q Continue, Dr. Glockner.

A In all instances, however, the maximum bending moment due to such bending action was limited to 20 percent of the yield moment, i.e. one-fifth of that value of bending moment which would cause yielding on the outer fibre of the pipeline, which is the most highly stressed portion of the pipeline. It should be recognized that the limits of displacement which are indicated on the exhibit titled "Allowable Spans for Elastic Deflection" are not the kind of displacements that would produce fracture in the pipeline. If one permits yielding not only in the extreme fibres but in sections of the pipeline closer to the neutral axis of bending, then substantially larger rotations and correspondingly larger displacements can be tolerated by the pipeline.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 The calculations, of course, are
2 also based on certain assumed loading conditions which
3 are felt to be a reasonable first approximation of the
4 actual state of stress at the soil/pipe interface. All
5 such loads are assumed to be loads acting on the pipeline
6 in its normal operational state so as to eliminate the
7 necessity of getting involved in the nonlinear load
8 deformation behaviour of the soil surrounding the pipe-
9 line. Finally, all calculations are based on assuming
10 that both pipe material and the soil have a unique
11 stress strain curve so as to guarantee a unique final
12 displacement irrespective of the order in which the total
13 load was applied or came to be acting on the pipeline.

14 The reliability of these pre-
15 dicted maximum possible displacements depends, of course,
16 on the degree to which the specified minimum strength
17 properties of the materials and assumed loading condit-
18 ions differ from the actual properties of the materials
19 involved and the actual forces acting at the soil/pipe
20 interface. The material properties and load distribut-
21 ions assumed in this analysis are consistent with the
22 data obtained from the initial field investigation.
23 Data from detailed field tests will be utilized in the
24 final design process.

25 Q Can you explain how your
26 work has been related to various pipe/soil interface
27 conditions, especially with respect to variations such
28 as frozen ground and unfrozen swamp?

29 A As stated in my reply to
30 question 1, two of the causes that were taken into

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 account in analyzing the pipeline as a circular cylin-
2 drical structure, were the movements expected in the
3 pipeline due to frost heave and settlement due to melt-
4 ing of ice lenses, as well as buoyancy effects in swamps.

5 In the case of frost heave, the
6 pipeline is assumed to be a straight or curved slender
7 beam fixed at its two extremities against lateral and
8 longitudinal movement. Due to the frost heave, it is
9 subjected to certain upward forces. At the same time
10 the upward movement tendency is counterbalanced by the
11 weight of the overburden soil as well as the shear
12 resistance of the soil along potential planes of shear
13 between the soil block which the pipe is trying to dis-
14 locate upwards and the surrounding soil section. The
15 weight of the soil can be estimated fairly accurately
16 but the shear resistance of the various types of soils
17 encountered along the pipeline load carry over a
18 large range and therefore, in order to be conservative,
19 the lower limit of this range was assumed to be zero.
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Any remaining upward unbalanced
2 forces, of course, have to be resisted by the pipeline
3 as a beam in bending, thus producing bending moments
4 and flexural stresses in the pipeline. The maximum
5 permissible upward deflections, which would produce bend-
6 ing moments in the pipeline equal to 20 percent of the
7 yield moment for various assumed pipeline segments are
8 given in the exhibits titled "Frost Heave Loading Con-
9 figuration" and "Allowable Deflections Due to Frost
10 Heave".

11 Here again, sir, we will have
12 to use a few slides.

13 Q The slides are what you
14 refer to, Dr. Glockner, as exhibits in your text?

15 A Yes.
16 This first slide, sir, tries to indicate the frost heave
17 loading configuration, that is the type of loads which
18 are acting on the piece of pipeline when there is frost
19 heaves taking place. This is the over all effective
20 span L over which this pipeline is trying to resist the
21 action of frost heave. We assume that the two ends,
22 the two extremities of this piece of pipe are being con-
23 strained against lateral and longitudinal movements.
24 Because of this constraint of course we have some forces
25 of the action here, sheared and bending moments, weaken-
26 ed ends.

27 All of these are caused by this
28 upward frost heave pressure which we assume to be acting
29 over a portion of the span designated by alpha L as a
30 heave span.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker,
Glockner
In Chief

1 This upward pressure and up-
2 ward motion, or tendency to move upwards, is counterbal-
3 anced, as I said a minute ago, partly by the weight of the
4 overburden the soil above, the shear resistance of the
5 soil which the pipe will try to push upwards, as well as
6 the flexural rigidity, flexural bending action of the pipe
7 itself.

8 We designate, sir, the weight
9 of the soil and the shear resistance of the which the
10 pipe is trying to push upwards, as ASW-I.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 the soil resistance in so many kips per foot . on
2 some following slides, and we designate the upward
3 pressure due to frost W-2 kips per foot.

4
5 We have assumed this upward
6 frost heave pressure as a uniform pressure in these
7 calculations. Also, of course the weight of the soil
8 and the shear resistance are assumed to be uniform
9 load.

10 Based on standard calculations,
11 one can calculate the kinds of deflections this pipe
12 can undergo, subjected to these loading configurations,
13 such that the stresses due to bending in the pipe at no
14 point shall exceed 20 percent of the yield moment,
15 and on the next couple of slides we are trying to show
16 some of the results of these calculations.

17 Can we have the next slide?

18 MR. GIBBS: Might the one which
19 Dr. Glockner has just referred to be marked as Exhibit
20 240, sir?

21 (FROST HEAVE LOADING CONFIGURATION MARKED AS
22 EXHIBIT 240)

23 WITNESS GLOCKNER:

24 A On this slide then we are
25 showing the allowable deflections due to frost heave.
26 We find the ratio of W-2/W-1, that means the frost heave
27 pressure to the overburden pressure in kips per foot as a
28 ratio.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1 THE COMMISSIONER: In what per
2 foot?

3 A KIPS that's a thousand
4 pounds sir, kips per foot, and along the assista
5 we are giving the ratio of this maximum deflection which
6 can produce such bending strengths to the overall span
7 so that we are giving non-dimensional
8 quantities here in the slide.

9 This whole graph, sir, is
10 applicable to an assumed value of the overburden equals
11 one kips per foot, that is one thousand pounds per
12 square foot, and then we have several graphs here, vary-
13 ing the length of the frost heave that is varying the
14 percentage over which the frost would be acting on the
15 whole span /for example, Alpha equals point I we are assuming that
16 frost pressure over 10% of the total span. Similarly
17 Alpha equals 0.2, 20%. 0.3 and 0.4. Then in these curves
18 then we can read off the deflection if you are kind enough
19 to specify a given length for me, the deflection which will
20 produce these bending pressures for a given ratio W-2
21 over W-1, in other words the curves contain quite a lot of
22 information.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
In Chief

1
2
3 The next diagram shows a sim-
4 ilar set of curves for a different value of the overburden, W-I
5 equals 3 kips per foot and again you can see the same trends of these
6 curves granted it is noteworthy that, naturally with higher upward
7 pressures, higher frost action. The deflection of the
8 span ratio has decreased, in other words we can't
9 follow it has as much deflection as the load deflection.

10 MR. GIBBS: Might those two be
11 marked, sir, Exhibits 241 and 242?

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.

13
14 (ALLOWABLE DEFLECTIONS DUE TO FROST HEAVE MARKED
15 AS EXHIBIT 241)

16
17 (ALLOWABLE DEFLECTIONS DUE TO FROST HEAVE-
18 FROST HEAVE TO ALLOWABLE SPAN RATIO MARKED AS
19 EXHIBIT 242)

20 DR. GLOCKNER:

21 A A further problem related
22 to ice lenses, which is attributed to the melting of
23 these ice formations, is the settlement of the support-
24 ing soil under a certain length of the pipeline. In
25 such instances, the pipeline will have to span over the
26 settlement area and carry the weight of the overburden,
27 together with its own weight as a beam. The length of
28 such soil settlements over which the pipeline can safely
29 span, as previously mentioned, depends not only on the
30 amount of overburden and its density but also on the
soil bearing pressures which are acting on the pipeline

1 adjacent to the settled areas as well as the distribut-
2 ion of such pressures along the pipeline. Results from
3 these calculations are indicated in the exhibits titled
4 "Settlement Loading Configuration" and "Allowable
5 Deflections Due to Soil Settlement".

6 I wonder if we could have the
7 next slide. This is a bit dark, I hope everyone can
8 see it. What we try to indicate here, sir, is that
9 the forces are acting again on the typical length of
10 pipe when such a settlement occurs. Again, the
11 effective pipeline span is indicated by "L"
12 We assume the two ends of this span will be fixed
13 against longitudinal and lateral displacement and of
14 course again we have forces that are shear acting at
15 those positions as the action.

16 The load that is acting on this
17 pipe segment now consists of some overburden pressure, that
18 is the weight of the pipe as well as the soil above it,
19 which the pipe will have to carry over this portion where
20 the soil below the pipe has settled if you like, or for
21 some reason disappeared. Adjacent to that wash-out, or
22 whatever caused this disappearance of soil, adjacent to
23 this of course the soil will have to carry some of this
24 load; in fact it will have to carry some additional load.

The pressure distributions adjacent to the soil wash-out areas, or areas in which the pipe will have to bend, are assumed to be triangular, varying from maximum values of W_2 to zero at some distance αL away from the actual washout. The distance over which this pipe has to span is designated by αL , a certain percentage again of the total span. As the previous slide W-I represents the total overburden weight, the weight of the pipe and the weight of the soil above it.

This assumes load configuration and again limiting the maximum bending on the span anywhere to 20% at yield moment so that the stress will be only 20% of the yield stresses, we can arrive at certain curves again where we've got ratio of W_2 to W , and again we have got maximum deflection of the whole span which will produce such maximum stresses, allowable maximum stresses.

We could maybe have a look at the next slide to see such results. On this slide, again the ratio of W_2 to W , this time the soil reaction, maximum soil reaction pressure to the overburden pressure and the allowable deflection to span ratio Δ over L . We have several families of curves here, sir, on this graph corresponding to various values of αL , that means various assumed percentages of the wash-out. For example in this set of curves we assume αL equal to point 1. In this set of curves we assume αL equal to point 2 and this set of curves here we assume αL , equal to point 4 so we increase the length over which the pipe has

1 to span as we go from here to here. In addition to that
2 it will be noted there was another variable which we
3 can vary, namely the length of resistance soil block ad-
4 jacent to the wash-out area, that is designated by Alpha
5 2 of L and therefore we have several curves within each
6 family for Alpha 2 varying from point 1 to point 2. We
7 are saying here, for example in this particular curve that
8 the wash-out in the middle of the span 40% of the length
9 of the pipe and the length over which the soil is resist-
10 ing adjacent to this wash-out is 10% of the span. Those
11 configurations and loads on the pipe we get this curve here
12 giving us W-2/W-1 versus allowable deflection to span ratio
13 and similarly all other curves.

1 I should mention that this
2 whole graph is drawn for value of W_1 is equal to 1
3 and one can generate similar curves and we have
4 generated similar curves with other values of $W-1$.
5 The value of $W-2$ of course is varied along this curve here

6 MR. GIBBS: Could the last
7 two be marked Exhibit 243 and 244
8 (SETTLEMENT LOADING CONFIGURATION MARKED AS EXHIBIT 243)
9 (ALLOWABLE DEFLECTIONS DUE TO SOIL SETTLEMENT MARKED AS
10 EXHIBIT 244)

11 MR. GIBBS: Would you continue Dr. Glockner.

12 A Along certain sections of
13 the pipeline route. muskeg and various slough areas are
14 encountered, in which the pipe will be surrounded by
15 a fluid medium of zero shear strength. Not only does
16 the pipeline lose its restraint, but also because the
17 overall density of the pipeline with its gas content is
18 less, than that of the surrounding liquids. upward
19 buoyancy pressures tend to lift the pipeline to the
20 surface of the fluids. In such situations, two problems
21 must be addressed.

22 The question of lack of longitudinal
23 constraint and the difference in longitudinal stresses
24 between the constraint buried pipe and the non constrained
25 floating pipe is one important aspect of the design.
26 In these muskeg or slough areas in the southern regions.
27 the pipe would be installed during the winter months.
28 Therefore, under the proposed operating conditions, there
29 will be large increase in temperature, which results
30 in substantial longitudinal stresses in the pipe. In
the case of a straight pipeline such stresses bring about

1 the necessity of considering the overall stability of the
2 pipe. In the case of curved portions such temperatures
3 effects produce additional flexural stresses.
4 Stability analysis of the pipe indicates that the pro-
5 posed spacing of saddle/^{weights} used to keep the pipeline
6 under the liquids is smaller by a factor of ten, than
7 the critical free length of the pipeline at which
8 overall instability would occur.

9 Number two, the uplift due
10 to buoyancy has to be counteracted by saddleweights
11 It is proposed that saddle/^{weights} spaced at designed intervals
12 will be used to overcome the buoyancy forces. These
13 saddleweights and buoyancy pressures result in flexural
14 deformations and longitudinal bending stresses in the
15 pipe. However, as long as the saddleweight elevations
16 are approximately equal, these stresses are relatively
17 small and amount to only approximately one percent
18 of the allowable longitudinal stress in the pipe.

19 MR. GIBBS: This panel is now
20 available for cross-examination.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you,
22 we'll adjourn for a few minutes for coffee now then.

23 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

2 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. MARSHALL.

3 Q Dr. Glockner, could you
4 have in front of you Exhibits 240 and Exhibit 241, the
5 first being the diagram of frost heave loading configur-
6 ation, the second being the allowable deflections due
7 to frost heave.

8 A Yes.

9 Q I'd like to work through
10 an example with you. of the application of your formula.
11 We could start with L which is as I take it from the
12 Exhibit 240, the effective pipeline stand. Could we
13 assume a length of 200 feet, would that be reasonable?

14 A Yes.

15 Q And then the next item
16 would be the heave span or described as Alpha L.
17 Would it be reasonable to assume a value say of 40
18 feet, roughly scaling your diagram here, if we have 200
19 for L, Alpha L at 40 feet?

20 A Yes.

21 Q And Alpha would therefore
22 be decimal two?

23 A That is correct.

24 Q The next component would
25 be the soil resistance, W-1. Could we assume the value
26 shown on Exhibit 241, which would be one kip per foot,
27 1.0^K/FT as you indicated there. right?

28 A Yes.

29 Q That's an overburdened
30 pressure then of 1,000 pounds per foot?

1 A That's correct.

2 Q Now then, W-2. which is
3 the heave pressure, I would ask you to assume 6.68 kips
4 per foot, would that be a reasonable value to assume
5 in such an example?

6 A I assume you have some
7 reasons for assuming 6.68.

8 Q Well it fits conveniently
9 on your scale.

10 A I beg your pardon?

11 Q It would fit conveniently
12 on your scale about a third of the way up.

13 A That's fine, you can pick
14 any number whatsoever.

15 Q I'm still at a bit of a
16 disadvantage here, but I understand that's a reasonable
17 figure to -- I'm told it's a good figure.

18 Then if we go to Exhibit
19 Number 241, we go up the left hand side, to 6.68. about
20 a third of the way up. We translate that, we carry that
21 point across onto your green curve which is Alpha 0.2,
22 which gives our assumption.

23 A Yes.

24 Q Then following that down
25 to the base line, we end up with a value, as I understand
26 it of about 11.3. Are we together?

27 A Well it's difficult for me
28 to sir to extrapolate these curves. I would have to have
29 a set square, but I would take your word for that
30 11.3, it doesn't matter.

1 Q Take 11.

2 A Eleven, yes.

3 Q Really, if you took 11.3
4 the rest of my figures might work out.

5 Then Delta over L would be
6 11.3 over 10,000 and working that through your formula,
7 my instructions are that we end up with a value for
8 Delta of .226 feet. I'm sure it's much easier for you
9 to go through that then for me. Is that how it works
10 out?

11 A It's 11.3 times 10 to the
12 minus 4, which is equal^{to} Delta over L, and therefore Delta
13 would be equal to 11.3 times 10 to the minus 4,
14 multiplied by 200, and multiplied by 12 if you want to
15 have it in inches and now I wish I had brought my slide
16 rule and my calculator along with me.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Dr. Glockner,
18 would you mind just running through those figures again.

19 A Well I was just writing
20 this down so I can get the numbers here, that the
21 counsel has asked me. 11.3 --

22 MR. MARSHALL:

23 Q I understand it's 2.71
24 inches. Dr. Clark has worked it out.

25 A Well I believe him.
26 But let me just do it myself okay, just to make sure.
27 I usually trust my calculations when I do them twice.
28 11.3 -- I guess I have to find out how to operate this
29 machine. 11.3 times 10 to the minus 4. Now there's
30 another problem you get in this one. Multiplied by 200

1 first equals -- all right, that sounds reasonable.
2 Multiplied by 12, -- no, it's no good.

3
4
5 THE COMMISSIONER: I don't know
6 how much longer we are going to go on.

7 MR. MARSHALL: I know I won't
8 last much longer sir.

9 WITNESS GLOCKNER.

10 A What did you get, Mr.
11 Clark, for the answer? .27 inches. 2.7 inches.

12 MR. MARSHALL:

13 Q About 2.7 inches.

14 A Fine.

15 Q I take it then that the
16 allowable deflections due to frost heave over this 200
17 foot span that we're analyzing would then be something
18 under three inches?

19 A This is correct. This is
20 a deflection which would cause bending stresses,
21 FLEXURAL stresses in the extreme fibre of the pipe,
22 equal to 20 percent of the yield moment,

23 Q Well sir, have you applied
24 this theory to any specific operational pipeline?

25 A What theory?

26 Q Your criteria as set out
27 in Exhibits 240 and 241.

28 A Well, I think that the
29 deflections which are calculated here apply to any
30 pipeline. This pipeline is just circular cylindrical
structure.

1 and we have got certain assumed loading conditions on
2 it and we calculate its displacements, for given spans
3 which will cause 20 percent of the yield moment at
4 the maximum bending moment sections which is either
5 at the end of the span or in the middle of the span.

6 Q Have you checked this
7 against what is happening in any pipeline that is
8 installed and in operation?

9 A You mean the deflections?

10 Q Yes.

11 A I haven't checked these
12 against any pipeline which is installed, no.

Mirosh, BAuer, Walker, Glockner
Cross-exam by Mr. Marshall

1 As far as I know, sir, there
2 hasn't been any pipelines constructed in the northern
3 climates where one could observe these frost heaves
4 very well.

5 Q Have you ---

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Just
7 the thing at Calgary?

8 A I beg your pardon?

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Just the test site
10 at Calgary. I don't know if you could check it against
11 that.

12 A Well it would be very
13 difficult to reproduce the frost heave conditions, sir.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: But they
15 have sought to do so at the University of Calgary,
16 haven't they? There's a frost heave test site there,
17 however that's irrelevant.

18 A Yes, there are some frost
19 heave test sites on the pavement, as I understand it.
20 Is that the one we are talking about?

21
22 MR. MARSHALL: It's a site near
23 the University of Calgary.

24 A I'm not familiar with
25 that, sir.

26 MR. MARSHALL:

27 Q Sir, could you tell me how
28 pipeliners would be expected to keep the deflections
29 within the limit as in this example we would come out
30 with less than three inches? Do you establish criteria

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
Cross-exam by Mr. Marshall

1 for that?

2 A Well, first of all, the
3 three inches I think came out -- are you thinking that
4 the deflection of three inches is perhaps small for a
5 frost heave? That comes as a result of picking 200
6 feet as the span, you see.

7 If you wanted to have a frost
8 heave with larger deflections, which you may very well
9 get, then the length of the pipe which would be involved
10 in that would be much more than 200 feet, you see. This
11 is why we ended up with only 3 inches, 2.7 inches.

12 Q Mr. Mirosh, you discussed
13 in the first page of your prepared evidence in this
14 panel, the matter of single river crossings as opposed
15 to dual river crossings, and you use these words in the
16 answer to question 3: "A single crossing at these two
17 locations will not only be as effective but will in
18 addition reduce river bank and river bed disturbances".
19 It's the words "as effective". By those words, are you
20 intending to mean as secure, or what is it that you
21 mean by them?

22 I say that because if you
23 intend to convey the meaning that it will carry the same
24 quantity of gas, well then I suppose there's no dispute
25 about that. What is it that you mean by the words "as
26 effective"?

27 MR. MIROSH:

28 A Yes, I think security
29 would be one element in the statement "as effective".

30 Q Sir, I take it that you

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
Cross-exam by Mr. Marshall

1 would agree with me that regardless of how selective you
2 are in the choice of the crossing location, and regard-
3 less of the substantial engineering precautions, or the
4 suitable installation methods to pick up phrases that
5 you use in your answer, it may well be that Foothills
6 might experience a failure at a river crossing, such as
7 one of the ^{one of the} Mackenzie River discussed in the paragraph.

8 A Was that a question?

9 Q Yes, it was.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: I think what
11 Mr. Marshall is getting at is this, since you don't have
12 dual pipe crossings at the river crossings, and you have
13 a failure, say during break-up, there might be -- no
14 doubt he's getting at this, there might be a two month
15 interruption of the flow of gas to southern Canada.
16 Is -- that's a scenario that you couldn't really argue
17 with, assuming you did have a failure, and of course we
18 understand that you don't intend to have any, but
19 there it is.

20 MR. MARSHALL: I think you
21 have been reading my notes, sir.

22 A Yes, I admit that I suppose
23 any pipeline has a realm of possibility of failure.

24 Q Well, would you agree, sir,
25 that if there's a dual crossing in the Mackenzie River,
26 that there is an equal likelihood that one of the cross-
27 ing -- that a single crossing line would go out of
28 service, as there is a possibility that both lines in
29 a dual crossing would go out of service at the same
30 time?

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
Cross-exam by Mr. Marshall

1 A Well I suppose if you had
2 two lines that were separated by considerable distance,
3 several miles perhaps, you would reduce the possibility
4 of losing both, but if you have a possibility of losing
5 one, you have a possibility of also losing two which are
6 close to each other.

7 Q Why do you have to be
8 several miles?

9 A Well, whatever may cause
10 the failure of a single crossing could also cause a
11 failure of two crossings in close proximity to each
12 other.

13 Q Well, if for example, it
14 was a metallurgical defect, that notwithstanding the
15 rigorous inspection procedures and so on escaped your
16 attention that caused the failure, you wouldn't consider
17 in such circumstances it would be likely that there
18 would be two such failures in both lines of a dual
19 crossing at the same time, would you?

20 A Well I would probably like
21 to turn this area of questioning over to Mr. Walker,
22 if I may.

23 Q Well I think I would
24 probably like to get an answer from you, sir, because
25 you have included it in your direct evidence, and I just
26 want to know what you, as the manager of engineering at
27 Foothills think --

28 MR. GIBBS: Sir, that was
29 just a summary Mr. Mirosh gave at the opening of his
30 evidence, and Mr. Walker certainly spoke on this in

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
Cross-exam by Mr. Marshall

1 detail and if he wants an answer, there's the man who we
2 have to get it from.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Before we
4 go on, this is all hypothetical in a sense, but it has
5 to be explored. Do you remember, Mr. Mirosh, the point
6 you made about Arctic Gas' dual pipes? It is one that
7 had occurred to me, that is if, owing to a severe con-
8 dition of ice gouging or something like that, one pipe
9 were to be damaged and to break -- we're really speaking
10 of external causes, I think -- then wouldn't they get
11 both of them at the same time so what's the good of dual
12 pipes.

13 How far apart did Arctic Gas
14 say its pipes were going to be? If you don't know, I'm
15 sure we can ask Dr. Clark, but I've forgotten.

16 A I believe it's over one
17 river width, but perhaps that can be --

18 MR. MARSHALL: I think that's
19 correct.

20 A -- which is not a very
21 great distance.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: One river
23 width, well that could be a mile at the Mackenzie
24 crossing, couldn't it?

25 A I believe it's just under
26 a mile.

27 THE COMMISSIONER: What about
28 the Shallow Bay crossing? That's a crossing of -- where
29 the width is four miles. Was it intended that the --
30 you could answer this, Dr. Clark, if you don't mind, was

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
Cross-exam by Mr. Marshall

1 it intended that the dual crossing at Shallow Bay, the
2 two pipes should be four miles apart?

3 DR. CLARK: Two hundred feet
4 in Shallow Bay, sir.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Two hundred
6 feet apart?

7 DR. CLARK: Yes.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: And what
9 about the crossing, say, at the east or Swimming Point?

10 DR. CLARK: One river width.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: One river
12 width which would be about a mile?

13 DR. CLARK: About 4,000 feet.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: And what
15 about Fort Simpson?

16 DR. CLARK: One river width there
17 about 4000 feet.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Well Mr.
19 Gibbs had urged you to direct that question to Mr.
20 Walker, I think and you had said no, you wanted Mr.
21 Mirosh to answer.

22 MR. MARSHALL: Well if he
23 doesn't know, sir, that may well be his answer. It's
24 in his evidence and because of his position with Foot-
25 hills, I wanted to get his answer specifically.

26 MR. MIROSH:

27 A Well could you restate
28 the question and I might try?

29 THE COMMISSIONER: Does anybody
30 in the hall know what the question was?

1 MR. MARSHALL:

2 Q I guess it really boiled
3 down to this, sir, wasn't there really less chance of
4 two failures at the same time, than of one failure?

5 A Well I think one should
6 look at it from the other way and try and install a
7 river crossing which would not fail whether it's one or
8 two.

9 Q Well assume both had been
10 installed in such a way that the best judgment of the
11 engineers concerned neither would fail, well surely
12 there's got to be less chance of both of them going out
13 than there is of one of them going out?

14 A I'm not certain of the
15 probabilities of that, but I suppose I could add that
16 one thing we have done in taking a single approach is
17 bury the pipe deeper than the dual pipeline approach
18 in the river bed.

19 Q What is your criteria for
20 burial, sir?

21 A Well we had a hydrological
22 calculation performed on scour, anticipated scour under
23 maximum anticipated flood conditions. I don't recall
24 -- perhaps it's 25 feet at Swimming Point which is the
25 burial depth, and I think the scour calculation was 15
26 feet.

27 Q Well perhaps you could
28 check your records, and if you find that's not correct,
29 you can let me know through Mr. Gibbs.

30 A Yes.

Mirosh, Bauer, Walker, Glockner
Cross-exam by Mr. Marshall

1 THE COMMISSIONER: Is that 25
2 feet to the upper, the top of the pipe?

3 MR. MIROSH: The top of the pipe
4 at the bottom of the river bed.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Well we
6 have been at this a couple of hours this evening. Maybe
7 it would be best to knock it off for now, and we'll
8 adjourn then and carry on at 9 in the morning.

9 Before we adjourn, Miss Hutchin-
10 son, would you see that copies of exhibit 225 and 226
11 are sent to Mr. Arion the President of the Chamber
12 of Commerce in Fort Simpson, to Mr. Reesor and to Mr.
13 Sigler, who is counsel for the municipalities. They are
14 some fairly recent data that they may not pick up in the
15 transcript, but I think they should see that material.

16 MR. GIBBS: Mr. Commissioner,
17 might I inform yourself and my friends that I may have
18 to set my metallurgical panel a little later in the
19 order because of the difficulty of getting one of the
20 witnesses. I hope not, but we may have to set it back.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Certainly.
22 Well, we will adjourn until 9 in the morning, and we'll
23 sit tomorrow morning and tomorrow afternoon, but we
24 won't sit tomorrow evening.

25
26 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO TUESDAY, SEPTEMBER 16,
27 1975 AT 9:00 A.M.)
28
29
30

347

M835

Vol. 61-A

AUTHOR

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:

TITLE

Vol. 61-A

15 September 1975

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME



3 1761 11467715 6